COBISS

COMARC/A
Format for
Authorities Data

User Manual

CONTENTS

Appendices

INTRODUCTION

GENERAL

The COMARC/A machine-readable format for authority records description and data exchange within the COBISS system is based on the UNIMARC/A Authorities Format. The latter is an international standard which is maintained by the IFLA UNIMARC Core Activity secretariat (UCA).

In addition to COMARC/A there are two other formats being used within the COBISS system: COMARC/B for bibliographic data and COMARC/H for holdings data; both formats support functions of shared and local catalogues and also these of maintaining bibliographies. They are presented in separate manuals.

The *COMARC/A* manual has been prepared according to *COMARC/B* manual. It includes primarily fields/subfields of the UNIMARC/A format with additional specificities of authority records structure within the COBISS system. The manual will be modified gradually following the future changes to the format, i.e. implementation of new areas of the authority control within the COBISS system.

The text of the manual is based on the publication *UNIMARC/Normativni podatki* (Institut informacijskih znanosti, Maribor 1994) which is the translation of the publication *UNIMARC/Authorities* from 1991; some updates from later editions of *UNIMARC/Authorities* are also taken into account.

At the moment the manual contains the description of fields and subfields relating to the authority control of authors and subject headings in the General List of Subject Headings COBISS (SGC). Instructions and examples that are not connected to the authority control in the COBISS systems are excluded. The exception is the chapter *Introduction* and the subchapters *Definitions* and *Guidelines for use* that also include the options from the *UNIMARC/Authorities* manual that are not used in COBISS systems.

Fields/subfields being contained by COMARC/A format, and also not by UNIMARC/A format, are marked by an asterisk "*".

COMARC/A format is prepared for the COBISS shared cataloguing system which is described in the *COBISS3/Cataloguing* manual. It is used in the CONOR and SGC databases.

For easier data entry within the COBISS shared cataloguing system input masks are implemented which include a selection of fields and subfields being used frequently while entering an authority record. All other fields may be used only if they are provided in a sample directory of the particular input mask. In the CONOR database, the following input masks are implemented: PN – personal names and CB – corporate bodies, and the following input masks are implemented in the SGC database: PN – personal names, CB – corporate bodies, GN – geographical names, FN – family names, UT – titles, NT – name/title, ET – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts, TN – topical subjects, FS – forms, genres or physical characteristics, CBR – corporate bodies (reference records), GNR – geographical names (reference records), TNR – topical names (reference records), FSR – forms, genres or physical characteristics (reference records) and GER – general explanatory records.

There is a list of subfields with a designation at the beginning of each field description indicating whether the field is repeatable (r) or not repeatable (nr).

Punctuation marks between subfields should not be entered strictly, because they are generated automatically.

The manual contains two types of examples. Examples not specially marked were taken from the manual *UNIMARC Manual. Authorities Format.* They are all prepared according to different cataloguing rules and in different languages. That is why they do not always correspond to our cataloguing practise. Marked with an asterisk "*" are added Slovenian examples and examples from other libraries from the COBISS.net network. The latter examples also contain the COBISS.net designation.

Experts from different institutions have participated, and still are participating with their suggestions in the development of COMARC/A format. That is why, we are grateful to them for their work.

All current and future users of this manual are invited to submit their suggestions and, in this way contribute and further improve solutions that have already been developed.

DEFINITIONS

The terms defined below are those used in special sense in *COMARC/A* manual; terms used in theirs normal bibliographic sense are not defined. A more complete listing of definitions relating to parts of an authority record are contained in *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records (GARR), Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries (GSARE), Functional Requirements for Authority Data (FRAD) and Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (ICP)* i.e. in corresponding translations in Slovenian.

Record Types

Authority record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element is the authorized access point for a person, corporate body, work, trademark, printer/publisher device, topical subject, place access or form, genre, or physical characteristics, as established by the cataloguing agency responsible. In addition to the authorized access point, the record contains, as applicable: information notes; a record of all variant and related access points from which references have been made; authorized access points in other language or script; classification and entry history information; notes recording sources consulted, etc.; an identification of the cataloguing agency responsible for the entry.

General explanatory record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element normally consists of a truncated or otherwise stylized or exemplary form, from which the user is directed to a general class or defined category of access points. It serves to inform the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography etc., of a convention that applies either generally or to a defined category of access points, and to provide guidance in locating such access points.

Reference record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element is the variant access point. It is designed to direct the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography etc., from the variant access point to the appropriate authorized access point (i. e. a see reference). Reference records are defined only for variant access points, because the references from authorized access points to related authorized access points (i.e. a see also reference) can always be generated from authority records.

Access Point Types

Access point

1. The initial element of an entry used as the principal filing element when the entry is arranged in an alphabetical listing. See also **authorized access point, reference access point and general explanatory access point.**

2. The word "access point" may also be used in terms such as "authorized access point", "variant access point ", etc., to refer to the status of an element as it relates to other similar elements and in those cases is used independently of its function within the authority or reference record. See also **authorized access point, authorized access point in other language or script, related access point, variant access point and alternative script access point.**

3. Terms such as "corporate name access point", "personal name access point" and "title access point" may be used to designate the type of access point by reference to the type of name or title on which the access point is based, without regard to its function or relationship to other access points.

Base access point – The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the name of the entity, excluding any qualifying data. For example, in the access point "**a**Nicolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico **f**15-- to 160-? **c**imprimeur-libraire", the base access point is "**a**Nicolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico" in Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i. e. "**c**imprimeur-libraire".

Controlled access point – An access point recorded in an authority record. Controlled access points include authorized forms of names as well as those designated as variant forms.

Access points categorized by function within a record:

Authorized access point – The access point for an authority record.

Reference access point – The access point for a reference record.

General explanatory access point – The access point for a general explanatory entry.

Access points categorized by relationship to other access points:

Authorized access point – An access point constructed using the preferred name as the basis of the form to be followed without variation.

Authorized access point in other language or script – An alternative form of the authorized access point based on another language or script form of the name, title or subject.

Related access point – One of two or more authorized access points for name of the same or related entities, each of which is bibliographically related to the other(s).

Variant access point – An access point in a form other than that established as the authorized access uniform access point. Generally such an access point is either based on a variant name sometimes used by the person, corporate body or family itself, or sometimes used by others to identify the person, corporate body, trademark, family, printer/publisher device or work; or constructed on a pattern different from that used to establish the authorized access point. In the case of a subject access point this is usually the variant form, which is not the same as the entry element of the authorized subject access point.

Alternative script access point – An authorized access point represented in another script.

Record Components

Tracing – The identification within the authority record of the variant or related access point from which a reference is to be made directing the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography etc., to the appropriate authorized access point. The tracing is designed to provide for the generation of references and assist the cataloguer in readily determining what references have been made.

Information note – A note of the type that is generally given in catalogues, bibliographies, etc., under an authorized access point, a reference access point, or a general explanatory access point for the purpose of explaining the relationship between that access point and other access points that are referenced from it.

Primary entity – The entity, named in the 2XX block, for which the record was created. Data in the 1XX block generally pertain to characteristics of the primary entity.

GUIDELINES FOR USE

Mandatory Fields

In addition to the System Field 000, which is entered automatically, a record must contain the following fields:

> *001 – Record label*
> *100 – General processing data*
> *2XX – Authorized Access Point Block*

Field and Subfield Repetition

If the designation "r" (repeatable) is associated with a field, i.e. subfield, then that field, i.e. subfield, may occur more than once in a record. The designation "nr" indicates that field, i.e. subfield may not be repeated.

Punctuation

The punctuation prescribed by GARR is not entered strictly because it is generated automatically. GARR prescribed punctuation consists of "=" (used with parallel access points), "<", ">", "<<", and ">>" symbols (used with tracings), ";" and "," (used in the source area – 8XX block). All other punctuation between subfields (in access points, notes, etc.), are generated automatically within the COBISS systems.

Fill character

Generally, all required data needs to be entered in the records, but this is not always possible if the data is not available. In such cases, the fill character "|" is used when the value of the indicator or the coded data cannot be determined.

Format Use

Authority Records

This format is designed to support primarily the communication of authority records for authorized access points. These records may also carry tracings of variant or related authorized access points (as outlined in *GARR, 0.3.1*), i.e. variant or related access points from which reference records are generated for display. A 4XX field is used for a "see from" reference tracing containing a variant form of the authorized access point. A 5XX field is used for a "see also from" reference tracing containing a related authorized access point. See examples 1, 6 and 9.

In exceptional cases, references can be added to authority records in note form: field *305 – Textual see also reference note*. Reference notes are used when a reference is too complex to be adequately generated from one or more related access points. The 2XX access point is also generally traced as a see reference tracing in a 5XX field of each of the records for access points mentioned in the 305 note. Such tracings would usually have the Reference Supression Code in the subfield 5 set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the reference record provides the reference. See example 2.

Reference Records

Reference records for variant access points are only made when see references are too complex to be adequately generated from 4XX fields in authority records. The reference record contains the variant access point in the 2XX field and a *310 – Textual see reference note*. The 2XX access point is also generally traced as a see reference tracing in a 4XX field of the authority record for each of the authorized access points referred to in the 310 note. These tracings would generally have the Reference Supression Code in the subfield 5 set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the reference record provides the reference. See examples 3, 10 and 11.

General Explanatory Records

General explanatory records are made when see references from explanatory access points are needed. The general explanatory record contains an explanatory access point in the 2XX field and a 320 General Explanatory Reference Note. The 2XX explanatory access point is not traced on any authority record. See example 4.

Relationships Between Access Points

Parallel Data

Option 1

A general principle for creating a record using this format is that one form of one access point is entered and that access point is appropriate for a catalogue in the language designated by the 100 field. The reference tracings constitute the reference structure for that access point in that catalogue.

If a cataloguing agency needs to construct a parallel catalogue based on another language, the agency may want to transmit equivalent or parallel language forms of the fields 2XX access point and the notes and tracings appropriate to the parallel access points. It is not recommended that the notes and tracings for the parallel access points based on language differences be co-resident in a single authority record. In using this format, these parallel access points should have separate authority records in which they have a role of authorized access point and where their reference structure will be recorded in the 4XX and 5XX reference tracing and 3XX note fields.

Note that when these parallel access points are in a different script, not only in a different language, they are still encoded following the rules for parallel data. If the access points are in a different but the same language as their corresponding fields then the rules for alternative scripts should be followed.

The records for the different formulations of the access point designed for different language catalogues may be linked through the 7XX fields for authorized access points in other language or script. In each authority record, each parallel access point and its associated authority record identifier (subfield 3) may be recorded in 7XX field. See example 7.

Option 2

Alternatively, an agency may treat parallel forms of the 2XX authorized access point as simple variants or references: 4XX or 5XX reference tracings with or without specifying language. The reference structures of the parallel forms are not needed and are not included in the record. The choice of technique depends on the practices of the establishing agency.

It should be noted that a distinction is made for a given record between:
1. the language of cataloguing, used for the quafifiers in the access points (2XX), variant access points (4XX), related access points (5XX), authorized access points in other language or script (7XX), and for notes (3XX);

2. the language of the base access point, that is to say the part of the access point that identifies the entry excluding any qualifying data. For example: in the access point "**a**Nicolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico **f**15-- to 160-? **c**imprimeur-libraire" the base access point is "**a**Nicolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico" in Italian. The language of cataloguing is French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i. e. "**c**imprimeur-libraire".

Alternative Script Data

The script of cataloguing (access point, notes, tracings, etc.) is identified in the 100 field of the record. Some agencies need to record access points, notes and tracings in more than one script form because of transliteration and alternative script orthographies used for a language (e. g. Cyrillic and Latin script). Alternative script representations of the access points, notes, and the tracings may be co-resident in an authority record or may reside in separate linked records. Note, however, that if the alternative script

representations differ in language from their corresponding access points, then the rules for parallel data apply.

When the alternative scripts representations are co-resident, then the alternative script forms of the 2XX record access point are recorded in repeatable 2XX access point fields, with a subfield 7 – *Script of the base access point* that indicates the difference from the script defined in the 100 field. The alternative script forms of notes or tracings are carried as repeated tags in their respective blocks. See example 8.

If the alternative script representations reside in separate records, then the records are linked through 7XX authorized access point fields which contain the alternative script form of the 2XX field. The 7XX field contains a subfield 7 – *Script of the base access point*. The record control number of the authority record for the alternative script form of the access point may be recorded in the 7XX field.

Data generated according to different rules

Access points in an authority record are generated according to the principle that their form is controlled with one set of either descriptive cataloguing rules or rules for subject indexing found in the field *152 – Rules*. However, for various reasons, the catalogue can include access points or complete authority records that were specified by different systems of rules. When these access points or authority records apply to the same entity, their relationship must be determined.

Some institutions record the access points constructed according to different rules in the same authority record or they record them in separate records that are connected with one another and supported by the entire structure of authority records (e.g. preferred access points, variant access points, notes, information on data resources). If the data generated according to different rules is in one single authority record, the forms specified according to different rules than the access point from the 2XX field are entered as variant access points into the repeatable 4XX and the relationship is indicated with the "n" code in the subfield 5 – *Relationship control*. If the data according to different rules is in separate authority records, other forms of access point from the 2XX field are entered as related access points into 5XX fields with the subfield 5 – *Relationship control* to indicate the relationship. See examples 5 and 12.

EXAMPLES

1.

210	02	**a**Pittsburgh Research Center
410	01	**a**United States **b**Bureau of Mines **b**Pittsburgh Research Center
510	02	**5**a **a**Pittsburgh Mining and Safety Research Center Center

(Authority record with the authorized access point in field 210. There is a variant access point in field 410 as see reference tracing, and a related access point in field 510 as see also reference tracing.)

2.

200	␣1	**a**Japp **b**Alexander H.
305	0␣	**a**For works of this author written under pseudonyms, see also **b**Gray, E. Condor **a**and **b**Page, H.A.

(Authority record containing a textual see also reference note in field 305.)

*

200	␣1	**a**Gray **b**E. Condor
500	␣1	**5**z0 **a**Japp **b**Alexander H.

(Authority record containing a related access point as see also reference tracing with display suppressed in field 500.)

*

200	␣1	**a**Page **b**H.A.
500	␣1	**5**z0 **a**Japp **b**Alexander H.
		(Authority record containing a related access point as see also reference tracing with display suppressed in field 500.)

3.

200	␣1	**a**Kacew **b**Romain
310	0␣	**a**Écrit sous deux pseudonymes **b**Ajar, Émile **b**Gary, Romain
		(Reference record containing a variant access point as reference access point in field 200 and a textual see reference note in field 310.)

*

200	␣1	**a**Ajar **b**Émile
400	␣1	**5**z0 **a**Kacew **b**Romain
		(Authority record containing a variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed in field 400.)

*

200	␣1	**a**Gary **b**Romain
400	␣1	**5**z0 **a**Kacew **b**Romain
		(Authority record containing a variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed in field 400.)

4.

210	12	**a**Conference
320	␣␣	**a**Conference proceedings are entered under the name of the conference, etc., or the title of the publication if the conference, etc., lacks a name. Thus, see also: Symposium..., Workshop..., etc.,
		(General explanatory record with an explanatory access point in field 210 and a general explanatory reference note in field 320.)

5.

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Mirković **b**Mijo
400	␣1	**5**e **a**Balota **b**Mate
500	␣1	**2**uni-PPIAK **5**n **5**f **a**Mirković **b**Mijo
500	␣1	**2**uni-PPIAK **5**n **5**e **a**Balota **b**Mate
		(According to the Croatian rules for implementing PPIAK *in an online catalogue with the* UNIMARC *Format for Authority Records the name Mijo Mirković and the pseudonym Mate Balota are treated as related access points. In* PPIAK*, the pseudonym Mate Balota is treated as a variant access point.)*

6. *

210	02	**a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**a **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo, gradbeništvo in geodezijo

7. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**cb **a**Фром **b**Ерих **f**1900-1980
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Fromm **b**Erich **f**1900-1980
		(In the COBISS.SR system catalogues are maintained in both Cyrillic and Latin script. Therefore, authority records contain two 200 fields. In the first field the

> *name is entered in Cyrillic script, and in the second field it is entered in Latin script. Both fields contain subfield 7 that shows the script of the base access point.)*

8. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**cb **a**Нушић **b**Бранислав **f**1864-1938
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Nusic **b**Branislav **f**1864-1938
700	␣1	**3**357 **7**ca **9**bul **a**Нушич **b**Бранислав **f**1864-1938

*

200	␣1	**7**ca **9**bul **a**Нушич **b**Бранислав **f**1864-1938
700	␣1	**3**613 **7**cb **a**Нушић **b**Бранислав **f**1864-1938
700	␣1	**3**613 **7**ba **a**Nusic **b**Branislav **f**1864-1938
		(In the COBISS.BG system three authorized access points are used for personal names. In first record the access points are entered in alternative scripts, the original name form in Cyrillic and the transcribed name form in Latin script. The second record contains the name entered in Bulgarian language. Records are linked through the 700 field.)

9. *

250	␣␣	**a**Ornitologi
450	␣␣	**a**Ptičeslovci
550	␣␣	**5**g **a**Zoologi
550	␣␣	**5**z **a**Ornitologija
		(Authority record with the authorized access point in field 250. There is a variant access point in field 450 and a related access point in fields 550.)

10. *

215	␣␣	**a**Osmansko cesarstvo **z**19. stoletje
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Osmansko cesarstvo **a**+ **b**Zgodovina **a**+ **z**1800-1899
		(Reference record with the reference access point in field 215 and a reference note in field 310 that refers you to the appropriate authorized access points. Authority records are not used for chronological subdivisions.)

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Osmansko cesarstvo |
| | | *(Authority record for the authorized access point from field 310 in the first record.)* |

| 250 | ␣␣ | **a**Zgodovina |
| | | *(Authority record for the authorized access point from field 310 in the first record.)* |

11. *

250	␣␣	**a**Ameriške balade
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Angleške balade **a**+ **b**Združene države Amerike
		(Reference record with the reference access point in field 250 and a reference note in field 310 that refers you to the appropriate authorized access points.)

| 250 | ␣␣ | **a**Angleške balade |
| | | *(Authority record for the authorized access point from field 310 in the first record.)* |

| 215 | ⸎⸎ | **a**Združene države Amerike |
| | | *(Authority record for the authorized access point from field 310 in the first record.)* |

12. *

152	⸎⸎	**b**sgc
250	⸎⸎	**a**Pust
450	⸎⸎	**2**lc **3**sh 85020377 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
450	⸎⸎	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11936675 **5**n **8**fre **a**Carnavals
450	⸎⸎	**2**sears **3**SSEA93000244 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
		(In the fields 450, the entered access point for the expression from field 250 is constructed according to the LCSH, RAMEAU and SEARS rules. It is evident from the code in the subfield 5 that this is an access point constructed according to different rules.)

Outline of Content of Records

Content of Record		Areas as Specified in GARR
Present in all types of records:		
0XX	Identification Block	ISADN Area (where applicable)
1XX	Coded Information Block	
8XX	Source Information Block	Cataloguer's Note Area, Source Area
Authority Record (type of record = x):		
2XX	Authorized Access Point Block (authorized access point)	Authority heading area
300	Information note	Information Note area
305	Textual see also reference note	
4XX	Variant Access Point Block	See Reference Tracing Area
5XX	Related Access Point Block	See Also Reference Tracing Area
7XX	Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Authority Heading Area
Reference Record (type of record = y):		
2XX	Authorized Access Point Block (variant access point)	Reference Heading Area
300	Information Note	Information Note Area
310	Textual See Reference Note	Uniform Heading Area
7XX	Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Reference Heading Area
General Explanatory Entry Record (type of record = z):		
2XX	Authorized Access Point Block (explanatory access point)	Explanatory Heading Area
320	General Explanatory Reference Note	Information Note Area
7XX	Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	Explanatory Heading Area

Correspondence between COMARC/A and COMARC/B

COMARC/A Access Point Fields	Access Point Usage in COMARC/B fields

200	Personal Name	700, 701, 702
		4XX with embedded fields 700, 701, 702
		600
210	Corporate Name	710, 711, 712
		4XX with embedded fields 710, 711
		601
215	Tertitorial or Geographic Name	710, 711, 712
		4XX with embedded fields 710, 711
		607
220	Family name	602
230	Uniform Title	500
		4XX with embedded fields 500
		605
240	Name/Title	604
243	Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts	604
250	Topical Subject	606, 608
280	Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics	606, 609

Display of Reference and Authority Records

The following methods may be used in coding data to allow flexibility in displaying reference and authority records as is allowed in GARR:

1. Tracings are divided into 4XX fields for variant access points and 5XX fields for related access points. The first character of these tags thus signals the need for the ">" or ">>" symbol for use in displays of reference records. For authority records,4XX and 5XX signal that the symbols "<" and "<<" should be displayed or *see* and *see also* references as appropriate.

2. The relationship code in the relationship control in subfield 5 – *Relationship control* may be used to indicate in coded form one of several standard relationships the tracings may have with the 2XX record access point. These codes allow systems to display specific relationship information in reference and authority records. Since the textual reference information generated as a result of the code is system dependent, the specific relationship or instruction may be in the language choice of the recipient. This relationship or instruction information is displayed in addition to, not in lieu of, the symbols ">", ">>", "<", and "<<".

3. If the particular relationship between the 2XX record access point and a tracing is not one of those for which a code value is defined in the relationship code of the subfield 5, but is still a one-to-one relationship, subfield 0 – *Instruction phrase* is provided to supply the instruction. Since this instruction phrase is in textual form, institutions that cannot use the information in the language given can omit it in displaying authority and reference records since the less precise ">", ">>", "<", and "<<" symbols will also be generated from the field designation. If the subfield 0 occurs in addition to the relationship code in the subfield 5, the instruction in the subfield 0 should be preferred for display unless it is undesirable for language or other reasons.

4. If a relationship between the reference and the referred to access point in several-to-one or has other complexities that make it desirable to transmit the reference as an information note (in addition to tracings), then the 3XX information notes may be used. Variant access points referred from and preferred access points referred to in information notes should also appear as tracings in appropriate authority records. This will allow an institution that cannot use the information note to still display (less precise) reference information from the tracings based on the 4XX and 5XX fields.

0XX IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

FIELD LIST

001   Record label
010   International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)
017   Other identifier
035   Control numbers of records in other systems

This block contains data that identify the record or the entity recorded in it. Field 001 is mandatory in every record.

001 RECORD LABEL

This field contains general data required for cataloguing records.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
001		Record label	nr
	a	*Record status*	nr
	b	*Type of record*	nr
	c	*Type of entity*	nr
	g	*Encoding level*	nr
	x	*Replacement record ID**	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

001a Record status

One-character code indicates a record cataloguing status. Subfield is mandatory.

c	*corrected or revised record*
	The code is used when a record is finally corrected, i.e. without grammatical and content errors (see example 2).
d	*deleted record*
	The code indicates a record which is no longer valid. When a record is marked to be deleted, the ID of the authority record, which is used instead of deleted record, should be entered in subfield 001x (see example 3).
n	*new record*
	The code is set as default for each new record (see examples 1, 5, 6, 7).
r	*split record*
	Invalid record, which in subfield 001x contains IDs of records for entities, into which the record was split (see example 4).

001b Type of record

One-character code indicates the type of a record. Subfield is mandatory; default value depends on the selected input mask.

x	*authority record*
	The code indicates a record containing a uniform (authority) access point entered in field 2XX.
y	*reference record*
	The code indicates a record containing a variant access point entered in field 2XX, which never functions as a heading in bibliographic records. The access point from the field 2XX also appears in field 4XX in one of the authority records.
z	*general explanatory record*
	The code indicates a record containing an explanatory access point entered in field 2XX. Such access point does not exist in 4XX fields of authority records.

001c Type of entity

The code indicates the type of entity entered in field 2XX. Subfield is mandatory; default value depends on the input mask.

a	*personal name*
b	*corporate name*
c	*geographic name*
e	*family name*
f	*title*
h	*name/title*
i	*name/collective title*
j	*topical subject*
l	*form, genre or physical characteristics*

001g Encoding level

The code indicates the degree of completeness of the record. Subfield is not entered when the record is completed (i.e. contains all necessary data including variant and related access points).

3	*partial*
	The record is not completed because appropriate reference work had not yet been carried out (see examples 1, 5, 6).

001x Replacement record ID*

If there are more authority records for the same entity (duplicates) in the authority database, we should determine the record which will be saved. The other records are marked to be deleted (code *"d" – deleted record* is entered in subfield 001a). The ID of the replacement record is entered in subfields 001x of the records that are marked to be deleted (see example 3).

If the authority record relates to several different entities with the same name, mark it as a split record if necessary (code *"r" – split record* is entered in subfield 001a); for each entity a new authority record should be created. IDs of all the new records should be entered in subfield 001x of the record having "r" code (see example 4).

EXAMPLES

1. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**x **c**a **g**3
200	␣1	**a**Horvat **b**Irena
		(New, incomplete authority record.)

2. *

001	␣␣	**a**c **b**x **c**a
200	␣1	**a**Horvat **b**Irena **f**1965-
		(Corrected, complete authority record.)

3. *

001	␣␣	**a**d **b**x **c**a **x**<nnn>
200	␣1	**a**Zagoričnik **b**Ifigenija
		(A record which is marked to be deleted. There is an ID of the authority record in subfield x, which is used instead of that record.)

   *

001	␣␣	**a**c **b**x **c**a
200	␣1	**a**Simonović **b**Ifigenija
		(A record which shall be kept (ID=nnn).)

4. *

001	␣␣	**a**r **b**x **c**a **x**<nnn, mmm>
200	␣1	**a**Bartol **b**Tomaž
		(A record which is marked as split. IDs of new authority records are entered in subfield x.)

   *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**x **c**a
200	␣1	**a**Bartol **b**Tomaž **f**1962-
		(New record (ID=nnn).)

   *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**x **c**a
200	␣1	**a**Bartol **b**Tomaž **f**1968-
		(New record (ID=mmm).)

5. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**x **c**j **g**3
250	␣␣	**a**Prosto potapljanje
		(New, incomplete authority record.)

6. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**x **c**e **g**3
220	␣␣	**a**Celjski **c**plemiška rodbina
		(New, incomplete authority record.)

7. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**y **c**j
250	␣␣	**a**Etnične skupine, ljudstva ipd. (Indija)
		(New, complete reference record.)

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)

This field contains the International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI). It identifies the parties involved throughout the media content industries in the creation, production, management and content distribution chains.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
010		International Standard Name Identifier (ISNI)	nr
	a	*Number (ISNI)*	nr
	y	*Cancelled ISNI*	r
	z	*Erroneous ISNI*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

010a Number (ISNI)

ISNI is comprised of a 16-digit number without blank spaces. If the subfield z is present, the subfield a is mandatory.

010y Cancelled ISNI

ISNI that was formerly valid but which has been cancelled by the ISNI Assignment Agency.

010z Erroneous ISNI

ISNI that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an identity or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different identities and in this instance cancelled.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The ISNI is assigned, in accordance with ISO 27729, by the ISNI Assignment Agency, in a centralized way. An ISNI is a "dumb" number, because none of its parts has any special meaning.

According to the provisions of ISO 27729:

- a party may have more than one public identity, each identified by a separate ISNI;

- the same ISNI shall be allocated to one and only one public identity of a party;

- alternative spellings, alternative presentations, character set variances, script variances and linguistic variances do not by themselves justify the allocation of different ISNIs.

Data Format

IISNI consists of 15 digits followed by a check character. The check character may be either a digit from 0 to 9 or the character X, which is calculated using the preceding 15 digits in accordance with the ISO/IEC 7064, MOD11-2 algorithm.

The 16 digits of the number are entered in a compact form, without blank spaces or punctuation, and not preceded by the letters ISNI.

When an ISNI is displayed for a user it is preceded by the letters ISNI, separated from the identifier by a space, and the 16 digits are displayed as four blocks of four digits, with each block separated from the next by a space.

The number is actionable, resolvable as follows: http:/www.isni.org/XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

RELATED FIELDS

200	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*	
210	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*	
220	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*	
400	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*	
410	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*	
420	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*	

EXAMPLES

1.

010	␣␣	**a**0000000121035067
200	␣1	**a**Lévi-Strauss **b**Claude **f**1908-2009
300	0␣	**a**Philosophe et anthropologue
300	0␣	**a**Membre de l'Académie française (élu en 1974)
400	␣1	**a**Strauss **b**Claude Lévi- **f**1908-2009
400	␣1	**a**Lévy-Strauss **b**Claude **f**1908-2009

400	␣1	**a**Strauss **b**Claude Lévy- **f**1908-2009
		(The record contains only one identity. The forms of the name contained in the 400 fields represent alternative forms of the name, which do not justify the allocation of different ISNIs.)

2.

010	␣␣	**a**0000000120300340
200	␣1	**a**Vargas **b**Fred **f**1957-....
300	0␣	**a**Archéologue
300	0␣	**a**Auteur de romans policiers
500	␣1	**3**120572294 **a**Audoin-Rouzeau **b**Frédérique **f**1957-....

010	␣␣	**a**000000036862981X
200	␣1	**a**Audoin-Rouzeau **b**Frédérique **f**1957-....
300	0␣	**a**Archéozoologue
300	0␣	**a**Membre de l'ERA 38 du Centre de recherches archéologiques du CNRS de Sophia-Antipolis, Alpes de Haute-Provence et de l'URA 1415 (en 1991)
300	0␣	**a**Connue également comme auteur de romans policiers sous le pseudonyme "Vargas, Fred (1957-....)"
400	␣1	**a**Rouzeau **b**Frédérique Audoin- **f**1957-....
400	␣1	**a**Audouin-Rouzeau **b**Frédérique **f**1957-....
400	␣1	**a**Rouzeau **b**Frédérique Audouin- **f**1957-....
500	␣1	**3**120583593 **a**Vargas **b**Fred **f**1957-....
		(Each of the two records above contains a separate identity for the same person. Each record contains one 010 field for the ISNI associated with the identity represented in the record. Both records are linked by the field 500.)

3.

010	␣␣	**a**0000000121068125
210	02	**a**London school of economics and political science
410	02	**a**LSE
410	02	**a**London school of economics
410	02	**a**University of London **b**London school of economics and political science
		(Field 010 contains the ISNI assigned to the organization.)

017 OTHER IDENTIFIER

This field contains an identifier related to the entity named in field 2XX, which does not correspond to any other field, and a qualification that further defines the identifier when there is more than one in a record. The field also contains the source of the identifier.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
017		Other identifier	r
	a	*Identifier*	nr
	b	*Qualification*	nr
	z	*Erroneous identifier*	r
	2	*System code*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Type of identifier***
	7	*system specified in subfield 2*
	8	*unspecified type of identifier*
2		***Not defined***

SUBFIELDS

017a Identifier

Identifier; the type depends on the system from which the identifier is obtained.

017b Qualification

Qualification of the identifier in subfield a or z.

017z Erroneous identifier

Identifier, for which you determine that it is used erroneously for a certain entity or that it is invalid in any other way. It is possible that it was assigned to two different entities and thus cancelled. If no valid identifier is known, the field 017 can only contain subfield z.

0172 System code

Code of the system from which the identifier is obtained.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

Other identifiers are unique, permanent and internationally accepted alphanumeric codes used for identifying entities. The structure of identifiers is determined by institutions that define them.

The subfield 2 is used only when the value of the first indicator is *"7" – system specified in subfield 2*.

EXAMPLES

1. *

| 017 | 7␣ | **a**0000-0002-8038-722X **2**orcid |
| | | *(Open Researcher and Contributor Identifier (ORCID) for researcher Leon Cizelj.)* |

035 CONTROL NUMBERS OF RECORDS IN OTHER SYSTEMS

This field contains the control number of the record from another system. Field is not mandatory.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
035		Control numbers of records in other systems	r
	a	*System control number*	nr
	z	*Cancelled or invalid control number*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

035a System control number

A code for the organisation put in brackets followed by the system control number for the record in that organisation's database. It is recommended to use the codes from the *MARC Code List for Organizations*. Otherwise the full name of the institution or a national code may be used.

035z Cancelled or invalid control number

The same form of the cancelled or invalid control number as in subfield 035a.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The control number is entered in the same form as in the other system.

RELATED FIELDS

Record identifier

The control number used as the unique identifier. It is assigned by the institution that prepared the record.

EXAMPLES

1.

| 035 | ␣␣ | **a**(CaBVaU)2835210335 |
| | | *(The control number was assigned by the "University of British Columbia".)* |

2.

| 035 | ␣␣ | **a**(OCoLC)1553114 **z**(OCoLC)153114 |
| | | *(The control number was assigned by OCLC. The number originally assigned was invalid and has been superseded.)* |

3. *

| 035 | ␣␣ | **a**(NNHWW)SSEA86000100 |
| | | *(The control number was assigned by the "H. W. Wilson Company".)* |

4. *

| 035 | ␣␣ | **a**(IZUM)COBISS03008718 |
| | | *(The control number was assigned by the "Institute of Information Science".)* |

1XX CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

FIELD LIST

100   General processing data
101   Language of the entity
102   Nationality of the entity
106   Access point used as subject
120   Coded data for personal name
123   Coded data for geographical name
128   Coded data for form of musical work and key
150   Coded data for corporate name
152   Rules
154   Coded data for title
160   Geographic area code
180   Coded data for form, genre or physical characteristics
190   Date of birth/beginning*
191   Date of death/ending*
192   Subtype of entity*

This block contains coded fields. Field 100 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered regarding the type of entity in field 2XX.

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

This field contains coded data applicable to all types of records in the authority database. Field is mandatory.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
100		General processing data	nr
	b	*Status of authorized access point code*	nr
	c	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	d	*Transliteration code*	nr
	g	*Script of cataloguing*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

100b Status of authorized access point code

A code indicates the level of establishments of an access point in an authority record. This subfield should not be confused with subfield *001g – Encoding level*, which relates to the completeness of the entire record.

a	*established*
	Access point is verified and established (see examples 1, 2, 3, 4).
c	*provisional*
	Access point can not be established definitely due to insufficient or inadequate information. When the access point is next used, it should be reconsidered in the light of any additional information.
x	*not applicable*
	The record is a reference record or a general explanatory record, which is why the field 2XX contains a variant or an explanatory access point (see example 5).

100c Language of cataloguing

A code is assigned automatically and it indicates the language used in cataloguing (see examples 3, 4).

The 2XXaccess point appears as it would in a catalogue based on the language specified in this subfield. Any qualifiers or notes will be in the language of cataloguing.

The base access point itself may be in a language different from the language of cataloguing. For example, according to some cataloguing rules a uniform title for a French anonymous work would be established in its French form no matter what the language of cataloguing is.

100d Transliteration code

The code indicates the transliteration system used for the first base access point in field 2XX.

a	*ISO transliteration scheme*
b	*other*
c	*multiple transliterations*
	The code is used when multiple scripts are recorded in subfields 7 of the access points fields. (see chapter Subfield 7).
d	*translit. table established by the National Bibl. Agency*
e	*translit. without any identified translit. table*
f	*other identified transliteration scheme(s)*
y	*no transliteration scheme used*

100g Script of cataloguing

A code is assigned automatically and it indicates the script used in cataloguing. Qualifiers in field 2XX appear in that script.

ba	*Latin*
	See example 3.
ca	*Cyrillic - script unspecified*
	See example 4.
cb	*Cyrillic – Serbian**
cc	*Cyrillic – Macedonian**

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
		(The language of cataloguing is French and the script is Latin.)

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**per **g**fa
		(The record is catalogued in Persian and in Arabic script.)

3. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
		(The access point is established, the language of cataloguing is Slovenian and the script is Latin.)

4. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**bul **g**ca
		(The access point is established, the language of cataloguing is Bolgarian and the script is Cyrillic.)

5. *

100	␣␣	**b**x **c**slv **g**ba
		(The access point in field 2XX is a variant or an explanatory access point in a reference or a general explanatory record, the language of cataloguing is Slovenian and the script is Latin.)

101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY

This field contains coded data relating to the language or languages used by the entity identified in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
101		Language of the entity	nr
	a	*Language used by the entity*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

101a Language used by the entity

This subfield contains a three-character code for the language (in accordance with ISO 639-2) in which a person, family or corporate body expresses themselves (writes, translates, etc.) or the code for the language of an expression of a work.

RELATED FIELDS

340   *BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE*

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**eng
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Maclean **b**Ian **f**19..-.... **c**expert auprès de l'UNESCO

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Masson **b**André **f**1930-....

> *(André Masson translates works from English or from German into French.)*

3.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**mul
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
210	12	**a**Congrès européen de systémique **d**1 **f**1989 **e**Lausanne, Suisse

4.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**mul
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
210	12	**a**Stamperia Camerale **c**Rome, Italie
		(Stamperia Camerale is a printing company created in 1589.)

5.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
220	␣␣	**a**Hugo (familie)

6.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**myn
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
230	␣␣	**8**fre **9**myn **a**Chilam Balam
		(Chilam Balam is the general name for a collection of 14 texts in Mayan languages written in Latin script.)

7. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Makarovič **b**Svetlana

8. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv **a**ita **a**fur
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Paletti **b**Silvana
		(Silvana Palettiis is a Resian by birth; she is publishing in Slovenian, Italian and Friulian.)

9. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre **a**ger
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
200	␣1	**a**Marija Antoinetta **c**francoska kraljica **f**1755-1793
		(Mary Antoinette was Austrian by birth and she wrote in French and German.)

102 NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY

This field contains coded data relating to the nationality of an entity.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
102		Nationality of the entity	nr
	a	*Country of nationality*	r
	b	*Locality*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

102a Country of nationality

Subfield contains a three-character code representing the country (according to ISO 3166) of nationality or citizenship of the person or the family or where the corporate body is headquartered. Subfield should be repeated if the person has a dual citizenship or if they live and work abroad.

Additional codes:

xxx	*country unknown*
	See examples 1, 4.
zzz	*international or multiple countries (more than 3)*

102b Locality

Subfield contains a two-character code representing the locality (see example 11). The following codes are used:

br	*Brčko District*
cr	*Montenegro***
cs	*Central Serbia*
fb	*Federacija BiH*
ko	*Kosovo***
rs	*Republika Srpska*
sr	*Serbia***
vj	*Vojvodina*

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

Any subfield b should follow immediately after the subfield a to which it refers. When more localities within one country should be recorded, subfield a is repeated in front of every subfield a.

RELATED FIELDS

340 *BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE*

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**eng
102	␣␣	**a**xxx
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Maclean **b**Ian **f**19..-.... **c**expert auprès de l'UNESCO
		(The authority record creator cannot determine the nationality of the expert.)

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
102	␣␣	**a**fra **a**che
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Schneider **b**Edgar **f**1929-1996
		(French and Swiss journalist.)

3.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**ger **a**eng
102	␣␣	**a**usa **a**deu
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Arendt **b**Hannah **f**1906-1975
340	␣␣	**a**German by birth. Naturalized American in 1951

4.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**und
102	␣␣	**a**xxx
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**a**Foppens **b**François **f**16..-17.. **c**imprimeur libraire prétendu
		(It is not possible to determine the nationality of this bogus printer-publisher.)

5.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**hun

102	␣␣	**a**hun
200	␣1	**a**Kodály, **b**Zoltán, **f**1882-1967
		(Hungarian composer.)

6.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**rus **a**eng
102	␣␣	**a**rus **a**usa
200	␣1	**a**Nabokov, **b**Vladimir, **f**1899-1977
		(Russian-American writer.)

7.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**ger
102	␣␣	**a**deu
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
210	02	**a**Goethe Institut

8.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**mul
102	␣␣	**a**che
152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
210	12	**a**Congrès européen de systémique **d**1 **f**1989 **e**Lausanne, Suisse

9. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv
102	␣␣	**a**svn
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Peroci **b**Ela

10. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv **a**hun
102	␣␣	**a**svn **a**hun
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Mukič **b**Francek
		(Raba Slovene.)

11. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**srp **a**ger
102	␣␣	**a**srb **b**cs
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Ćorović **b**Vladimir **f**1885-1941
		(Serbian historian.)

12. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
102	␣␣	**a**fra
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
220	␣␣	**a**Bonaparti **c**vladarska rodbina

(French royal family.)

106 ACCESS POINT USED AS SUBJECT

This field contains coded data relating to the use of the access point as subject.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
106		Access point used as subject	nr
	a	*Use of the access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

106a Use of the access point

A code indicates if an access point may be used as subject.

0	*may be used as subject access point*
	See examples 1, 2, 3, 7.
1	*cannot be used as subject access point*
	See examples 4, 8, 12.
2	*may be used only as subject access point*
	See examples 5, 6, 9–11, 13–15.

RELATED FIELDS

200   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

210   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*

220   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␢␢	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba

101	␣␣	**a**fre
106	␣␣	**a**0
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
200	␣1	**a**Hugo **b**Victor **f**1802-1885
		(Personal name can be used as author heading and as subject.)

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
106	␣␣	**a**0
150	␣␣	**a**y
210	02	**a**Centre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou **c**Paris
		(Corporate body name can be used as corporate body heading and as subject.)

3.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
106	␣␣	**a**0
220	␣␣	**a**Gaillard **c**famille
		(Family name can be used as family heading and as subject.)

4.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre
106	␣␣	**a**1
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
200	␣0	**a**San Antonio
		(Personal name cannot be used as subject; for subject usage, use: Dard, Frédéric (1921–2000).)

5.

106	␣␣	**a**2
215	␣␣	**a**Pinocchio **c**personnage fictif
		(Personal name can only be used as subject.)

6.

106	␣␣	**a**2
250	␣␣	**a**Oiseaux
		(Topical subject can only be used as subject.)

7. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv
102	␣␣	**a**svn
106	␣␣	**a**0
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1974 **b**08 **c**12
200	␣1	**a**Dolenc **b**Janez **f**1974- **r**21203
		(Personal name can be used as author heading and as subject.)

8. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**slv **a**eng **a**fre

102	␣␣	**a**svn
106	␣␣	**a**1
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1966 **b**09 **c**29
200	␣1	**a**Klepec **b**Peter **r**13472
		(Personal name cannot be used as subject.)

9. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
152	␣␣	**a**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Severni jeleni
		(Topical subject can only be used as subject.)

10. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
200	␣0	**a**Zevs **c**grško božanstvo
		(Name of a deity is used only as subject.)

11. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
200	␣0	**a**Atila **c**hunski kralj **f**?-453
		(Personal name is used only as subject.)

12. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**1
210	02	**9**lat **a**Ecclesia catholica
		(Corporate body name cannot be used as subject; for subject usage, use: Katoliška cerkev.)

13. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
210	02	**a**Nebotičnik **c**Ljubljana, Slovenija
		(Corporate body name is used only as subject.)

14. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
215	␣␣	**a**Slavolok Sergijevcev (Pulj, Hrvaška)
		(Name of the arch of triumph is used only as subject.)

15. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
106	␣␣	**a**2
220	␣␣	**a**Nemanjiči **a**vladarska rodbina
		(Family name is used only as subject.)

120 CODED DATA FOR PERSONAL NAME

This field contains coded data relating to personal names. Field is mandatory.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
120		Coded data for personal name	nr
	a	*Gender of entity*	nr
	b	*Differentiated or undifferentiated personal name*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

120a Gender of entity

A code indicates the gender of the entity identified in field 200.

a	*female*
b	*male*
c	*transgender*
	The entity has changed gender (see examples 2, 8).
u	*unknown*
	The gender of the entity cannot be determined (see examples 3, 7).

120b Differentiated or undifferentiated personal name

A code indicates whether the name in field 200 relates to one or more entities.

a	*differentiated personal name*
	The authority record identifies a single identity, because if more entities have the same name, the entity in field 200 is distinguished from other entities of the same name by the addition of qualifying data, e.g.: dates of birth or death, title of nobility, honorifics and terms of address, descriptive epithets, etc. (see examples 1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8).
b	*undifferentiated personal name*
	The authority record may identify several identities because the entity in field 200 cannot be distinguished from other entities of the same name (see examples 3, 6).

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**eng
120	␣␣	**a**a **b**a
200	␣1	**a**Christie, **b**Agatha, **f**1890-1976
		(The entity is female and the name is differentiated by the addition of dates of birth and death.)

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**eng
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
200	␣1	**a**Morris, **b**James, **f**1926-
500	␣1	**a**Morris, **b**Jan, **f**1926-
810	␣␣	**a**His Coast to coast, 1956.

*

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**eng
120	␣␣	**a**c **b**a
200	␣1	**a**Morris, **b**Jan, **f**1926-
340	␣␣	**a**James Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
500	␣1	**a**Morris, **b**James, **f**1926-
810	␣␣	**a**A Machynlleth triad, 1995 **b**t.p. (Jan Morris)

3.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
120	␣␣	**a**u **b**b
200	␣1	**a**Smith, **b**J.
810	␣␣	**a**Author of The art of poster making
810	␣␣	**a**The art of poster making, 1989: **b**t.p. (J. Smith)
810	␣␣	**a**Author of Peter's pip
810	␣␣	**a**Peter's pip, 1986: **b**t.p. (J. Smith) [Another author?]
		(The gender is unknown because it cannot be determined from the name entered in field 200; the access point in field 200 is undifferentiated because no distinguishing data is available.)

4.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**lat
102	␣␣	**a**xxx
120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
200	␣1	**a**Antonius, **b**Marcus, **c**Orator, **f**143-87 b.C.

*

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**eng **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**lat
102	␣␣	**a**xxx

120	⌴⌴	**a**b **b**a
200	⌴1	**a**Antonius, **b**Marcus, **c**Triumvir, **f**82-30 b.C.
		(Two authors of the same name have been differentiated by the addition of descriptive epithets and dates of birth and death.)

5. *

120	⌴⌴	**a**b **b**a
152	⌴⌴	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1960
200	⌴1	**a**Chen **b**Shi Ning **r**11697
		(The entity is male and the record relates only to one identity.)

6. *

120	⌴⌴	**a**b **b**b
152	⌴⌴	**a**PPIAK
200	⌴1	**a**Bajželj **b**Janez
810	⌴⌴	**a**Mehanski filtri : diplomsko delo. – 1959. **b**Janez Bajželj
810	⌴⌴	**a**Kodiranje slike z vodno označbo : diplomsko delo. - 2000. **b**Janez Bajželj
810	⌴⌴	**a**Model za utvrđivanje tokova daljinskih putnika / Mirko Čičak, Dragomir Mandić, Janez Bajželj. V: Železnice. - ISSN 0350-5138. - 45 (1989), 6, str. 661-680. **b**Janez Bajželj
		(The record relates to several males that cannot be differentiated.)

7. *

120	⌴⌴	**a**u **b**a
152	⌴⌴	**a**PPIAK
200	⌴1	**a**Salom **b**Lala **r**09314
		(The record relates to one identity with unknown gender, because it could not be determined only by the name.)

8. *

120	⌴⌴	**a**c **b**a
152	⌴⌴	**a**PPIAK
200	⌴1	**a**Bornstein **b**Kate
340	⌴⌴	**a**Rojena kot Albert Herman Bornstein (sprememba spola)
		(The record for the person that has changed gender.)

123 CODED DATA FOR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

This field contains coded data relating to geographical names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
123		Coded data for geographical name	r
	d	*Co-ordinates – westernmost longitude*	nr
	e	*Co-ordinates – easternmost longitude*	nr
	f	*Co-ordinates – northernmost latitude*	nr
	g	*Co-ordinates – southernmost latitude*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

123d Co-ordinates – westernmost longitude
123e Co-ordinates – easternmost longitude
123f Co-ordinates – northernmost latitude
123g Co-ordinates – southernmost latitude

Subfields d, e, f and g contain co-ordinates of points on Earth or other celestial bodies. Each subfield is fixed at 8 characters and contains the following data:

- hemisphere designation – one character ("w" = west, "e" = east, "n" = north, "s" = south
- degrees (3 numeric characters)
- minutes (2 numeric characters)
- seconds (2 numeric characters)

The numbers are right justified. Unused spaces are filled with zeros.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

If the area co-ordinates are given for a centre point and not for outside limits, the longitude and latitude of the central axes are each recorded twice, in subfields d and e (dolžino) (longitude) and subfields f and g (latitude).

RELATED FIELDS

215   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

123	␢␢	**d**e0790000 **e**e0860000 **f**n0200000 **g**n0120000
		(India: longitude 79°E to 86°E, latitude 20°N to 12°N.)

2.

123	␢␢	**d**e0122000 **e**e0122000 **f**n0452600 **g**n0452600
		(Venice: latitude 45°26'N, longitude 12°20'E.)

3.   *

123	␢␢	**d**e0132300 **e**e0163600 **f**n0465300 **g**n0452500
215	␢␢	**a**Slovenija
		(Slovenia: longitude 13°23'E to 16°36'E, latitude 46°53'N to 45°25'N.)

4.   *

123	␢␢	**d**e0144007 **e**e0144007 **f**n0462656 **g**n0462656
215	␢␢	**a**Potočka zijalka (Slovenija)
		(Potočka zijalka: latitude 46°26'56"N, longitude 14°40'7"E.)

128 CODED DATA FOR FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY

This field contains coded data relating to form and key of a musical work.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
128		Coded data for form of musical work and key	r
	a	*Form of musical work*	nr
	d	*Key or mode of musical work*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

128a Form of musical work

This subfield contains a two- or three-character code indicating the form of a musical work.

The same code list is used as for subfield 128a in COMARC/B.

128d Key or mode of musical work

This subfield contains the code indicating the key or church mode of a musical work, if significant. Major keys are indicated with letters "a"–"g", minor keys with letters "a"–"g", followed by the letter "m"; sharps, indicated by an "x", and flats, indicated by a "b", following the key code. "Gregorian" church modes are indicated with numbers "01"–"13".

The same code list is used as for subfield 128d in COMARC/B.

RELATED FIELDS

230 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*
240 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1. *

128	␣␣	**aco b**dm
		(Coded data for the musical work Missa primi toni *by Johannes Ockeghem.)*

150 CODED DATA FOR CORPORATE NAME

This field is used to convey additional information about the corporate body.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
150		Coded data for corporate name	nr
	a	*Type of government agency*	nr
	b	*Conference or meeting code*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

150a Type of government agency

A code indicates wheather the heading is for a government organization (academic institutions are not considered government agencies).

a	*federal/national* See examples 3, 4.
b	*state/province* See example 2.
c	*county/department*
d	*local (municipal, etc.)*
e	*locally competent body covering multiple areas*
f	*intergovernmental*
g	*government in exile or clandestine*
h	*level not determined*
y	*not a government organization* See example 1.
z	*other government level*

150b Conference or meeting code

This code indicates whether the corporate body is a meeting. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. They can be entered directly under their name or not (see field 210, indicator 1).

0	*the corporate body is not a conference/meeting*
1	*the corporate body is a conference/meeting*
	See example 9.

EXAMPLES

1.

150	⊔⊔	**a**y **b**0
210	02	**a**Brunel University. **b**Education Liaison Centre

2.

150	⊔⊔	**a**b **b**0
210	01	**a**Ontario. **b**Office of arbitration

3.

150	⊔⊔	**a**a **b**0
210	01	**a**United States. **b**Department of Defense

4. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**a **b**0
210	01	**a**Slovenija **b**Slovenska vojska

5. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**a **b**0
152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
210	02	**a**Kraljevina Srbov, Hrvatov in Slovencev
		(State-level political entity.)

6. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**f **b**0
152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
210	02	**a**Mednarodni denarni sklad
		(Intergovernmental organisation.)

7. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**a **b**0
152	⊔⊔	**b**PPIAK
210	01	**9**eng **a**United States **b**Embassy in Slovenia
		(Corporate body subject to state-level political entity.)

8. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**y **b**0
152	⊔⊔	**b**PPIAK
210	02	**a**Slovenska akademija znanosti in umetnosti **b**Biblioteka
		(Corporate body subject to non-governmental organisation.)

9. *

150	⊔⊔	**a**y **b**1
152	⊔⊔	**b**PPIAK

| 210 | 02 | **a**Zveza bibliotekarskih društev Slovenije **b**Strokovno posvetovanje **f**2009 **e**Maribor
(Non-governmental organisation meeting.) |

152 RULES

This field indicates the rule system under which the 2XX authorized access point and its accompanying reference structure were formulated.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
152		Rules	nr
	a	*Cataloguing rules*	nr
	b	*Subject system*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

152a Cataloguing rules

The code indicates the cataloguing rules used to formulate the access point and reference structure.

AACR2R	*Anglo-American cataloguing rules, 2nd ed., revised*
AIK67	*Kalan, P: Abecedni imenski katalog 1967, 2. izdaja*
PPIAK	*Pravilnik i priručnik za izradbu abecednih kataloga*
RAKK	*Ръководство за азбучни каталози на книги*
RDA	*Resource Description and Access*

152b Subject system

The code indicates the subject system used to formulate the access point and reference structure. In some systems, an access point may be formulated under certain cataloguing rules but also be used in a certain subject system. In such cases, enter the codes for both the cataloguing rules and the subject system.

sgc	*COBISS.SI General List of Subject Headings*

EXAMPLES

1. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
200	␣1	**a**Potrč **b**Iztok **r**02046

2. *

152	␣␣	**a**AACR2R
200	␣1	**a**Quick **b**Amanda
300	0␣	**a**Amanda Quick je psevdonim; pravo avtoričino ime je Jayne Ann Krentz; objavlja pa tudi kot Stephanie James, Jayne Castle in Jayne Taylor
400	␣1	**a**Kvik **b**Amanda
500	␣1	**5**f **a**Krentz **b**Jayne Ann
500	␣1	**5**e **a**James **b**Stephanie
500	␣1	**5**e **a**Castle **b**Jayne
500	␣1	**5**e **a**Taylor **b**Jayne

3. * COBISS.net

152	␣␣	**a**RAKK
200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Йовков **b**Йордан Стефанов **f**1880-1937
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Jovkov **b**Jordan Stefanov **f**1880-1937
400	␣1	**a**Йовков **b**Йордан

4. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Kozmografija
450	␣␣	**a**Opisna astronomija
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Astronomija

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
200	␣0	**a**Vitezi okrogle mize **c**legendarni liki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Legendarni liki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Romani o kralju Arturju

6. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
220	␣␣	**a**Herbersteini **c**plemiška rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Grafen von Herberstein
420	␣␣	**a**Grofje Herbersteini
420	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Herberstein **c**plemiška rodbina
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxk **9**ger **a**Herberstein **b**Žiga
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Plemstvo **y**Avstrija
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Plemstvo **y**Slovenija

7. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Bližnji vzhod
415	␣␣	**a**Bližnji in Srednji vzhod
415	␣␣	**a**Jugozahodna Azija
415	␣␣	**a**Jutrovo
415	␣␣	**a**Levanta

415	␣␣	**a**Prednja Azija
415	␣␣	**a**Rodovitni polmesec
415	␣␣	**a**Srednji vzhod
415	␣␣	**a**Vzhodni Mediteran
415	␣␣	**a**Vzhodno Sredozemlje
415	␣␣	**a**Zahodna Azija
515	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Azija
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Orient
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Arabske države
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Bližnji vzhod **x**Zgodovina
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Arheološke ostaline **y**Bližnji vzhod
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Bližnjevzhodna civilizacija
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Bližnjevzhodne študije

8.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
230	␣␣	**a**Sveto pismo
430	␣␣	**a**Biblia
430	␣␣	**a**Biblija
430	␣␣	**a**Knjiga knjig
430	␣␣	**a**Sveta Biblija
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Svetopisemske teme in motivi
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Teologija

154 CODED DATA FOR TITLE

This field is used for entering additional information on the title.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
154		Coded data for title	nr
	a	*Title data*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

154a Title data

The code indicates the type of series when the access point is a series title.

a	*monographic series*
b	*multipart item (e.g. kit, score and parts, multivolume monograph)*
c	*series-like phrase (not to be considered a series)*
z	*other*

RELATED FIELDS

230   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

154	␣␣	**aa**
230	␣␣	**a**CBMS regional conference series in mathematics

2.

154	␣␣	**ab**
230	␣␣	**a**Cambridge history of Iran

3.

| 154 | ␣␣ | **ac** |
| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Viking books |

160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

This field contains geographic area codes for geographic areas associated with the authorized access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
160		Geographic area code	nr
	a	*Geographic area code*	r
	b	*Local geographic area code**	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

160a Geographic area code

The code indicates a geographic area.

160b Local geographic area code*

The code indicates a narrower geographic area within an individual country in the COBISS system or in the border areas of their neighbouring countries.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The code contains seven characters (letters and hyphens) and enables a breakdown of geographic and political entities.

The global code list of geographic areas is used for coding (*Appendix B.1* with the alphabetic list of names or *Appendix B.2* with the alphabetic list of codes). In subfield a, the codes from the *MARC code list for geographic areas* (see *Appendix D* of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*) are entered. In subfield b, the codes from the local code list used in individual COBISS systems are entered.

EXAMPLES

1.

160	⊔⊔	**a**n-cn---
250	⊔⊔	**a**Canadian Grand Prix Race
		(Example from a foreign system.)

2.

160	⊔⊔	**a**a-----
215	⊔⊔	**a**Amazon River
		(Example from a foreign system.)

3.   *

160	⊔⊔	**a**e-au---
215	⊔⊔	**a**Dunaj (Avstrija)

4.   *

160	⊔⊔	**a**mm-----
215	⊔⊔	**a**Sredozemlje

5.   *

160	⊔⊔	**a**ea----- **a**e-xv--- **a**e-au---
215	⊔⊔	**a**Karavanke (Slovenija in Avstrija : gorovje)
		(Because there is no uniform code for this geographic area, a combination of several geographic area codes must be used.)

6.   *

160	⊔⊔	**a**e-xv--- **a**e-xv-ok
215	⊔⊔	**a**Viadukt Črni Kal (Slovenija)
		(The name of the object is given in the form of a geographic name. Because the object is located in Slovenia, it has been assigned the code for Slovenia and an additional code from the local code list for the geographic area where the place and the object are located.)

7.   *

160	⊔⊔	**a**e-xv--- **a**e-xv-jv **a**e-xv-os
215	⊔⊔	**a**Dolenjska (Slovenija)
		(Because there is no uniform code for this Slovenian geographic area in the local code list, a combination of several local geographic area codes must be used.)

180 CODED DATA FOR FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This field is used for entering additional information on form, genre of physical characteristics.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
180		Coded data for form, genre or physical characteristics	nr
	a	*Form or genre or physical characteristics code*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

180a Form or genre or physical characteristics code

The code indicates whether the entity identified in field 280 as an authorized access point represents a form or a genre or describes physical characteristics (see examples 1, 2, 3).

a	*form*
b	*genre*
c	*physical characteristics*

RELATED FIELDS

280   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

EXAMPLES

1.   *

180	␣␣	**aa**
280	␣␣	**a**Atlasi
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). The entity Atlasi *represents a form.)*

2. *

180	␣␣	**ab**
280	␣␣	**a**Slovenski soneti
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). The entity Slovenski soneti *represents a genre.)*

3. *

180	␣␣	**ac**
280	␣␣	**a**Zvočne knjige
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). The entity Zvočne knjige *describes physical characteristics.)*

190 DATE OF BIRTH/BEGINNING*

This field is used in the authority records for personal names (date of birth) as well as corporate bodies and titles (date of beginning).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
190		Date of birth/beginning*	nr
	a	*Year*	nr
	b	*Month*	nr
	c	*Day*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Exactness of date***
	0	*date is unknown*
	1	*date is known*
2		***Date B.C. or A.D.***
	0	*date B.C.*
	1	*date A.D.*

SUBFIELDS

190a Year

The year is entered in the format YYYY. When exact year, decade or century is unknown, a question mark is used in corresponding spaces.

190b Month

The month is entered in the format MM.

190c Day

The day is entered in the format DD.

EXAMPLES

1. *

190	11	**a**1946 **b**08 **c**02
200	␣1	**a**Horvat **b**Sonja **r**03876
		(The year of the person's birth is known.)

2. *

190	11	**a**1867 **b**12 **c**03
200	␣1	**a**Milčinski **b**Fran **f**1867-1932
		(The year of the person's birth is known.)

3. *

120	␣␣	**a**b **b**a
152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	01	**a**1970
200	␣1	**a**Kovačevič **b**Marijan
		(The year of the author's birth is unknown.)

4. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	10	**a**0427
200	␣0	**a**Plato
		(The author was born in 427 B.C.)

5. *

152	␣␣	**a**sgc
190	11	**a**1717 **b**05 **c**13
200	␣0	**a**Marija Terezija **c**nemška cesarica **f**1717-1780
		(The year of the person's birth is known.)

6. *

152	␣␣	**a**sgc
190	00	**a**13??
200	␣0	**a**Amenofis **d**IV **c**faraon **f**13..-1334? pr. n. št.
		(The year/decade of birth of the person, who lived in the 14th century B.C., is unknown.)

7. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1993 **b**11 **c**01
210	02	**a**Evropska unija
		(The year of founding of the corporate body is known.)

8. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
190	11	**a**1847
240	␣␣	**a**Prešeren, France **t**Poezije
		(Prešeren's Poezije *was first published with the year 1847.)*

191 DATE OF DEATH/ENDING*

This field is used in the authority records for personal names (date of death), corporate bodies (date of ending) and titles (publication date of the last issue of a serial or the last part of a monograph).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
191		Date of death/ending*	nr
	a	*Year*	nr
	b	*Month*	nr
	c	*Day*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Exactness of date***
	0	*date is unknown*
	1	*date is known*
2		***Date B.C. or A.D.***
	0	*date B.C.*
	1	*date A.D.*

SUBFIELDS

191a Year

The year is entered in the format YYYY. When exact year, decade or century is unknown, a question mark is used in corresponding spaces.

191b Month

The month is entered in the format MM.

191c Day

The day is entered in the format DD.

EXAMPLES

1. *

190	11	**a**1758 **b**02 **c**03
191	11	**a**1819 **b**01 **c**08
200	␣1	**a**Vodnik **b**Valentin
		(The year of the person's death is known.)

2. *

190	11	**a**1914 **b**12 **c**14
191	11	**a**1988 **b**02 **c**26
200	␣1	**a**Milčinski **b**Frane **f**1914-1988
		(The year of the person's death is known.)

3. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1928
191	01	**a**1992
200	␣1	**a**Bezjak **b**Silva **r**03132
		(The year of the author's death is unknown.)

4. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	10	**a**0106
191	10	**a**0043
200	␣1	**a**Cicero **b**Marcus Tullius
		(The author died in 43 B.C.)

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
190	01	**a**1162
191	11	**a**1227 **b**08 **c**18
200	␣0	**a**Džingiskan **f**1162?-1227
		(The year of the person's death is known.)

6. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
190	00	**a**06??
191	00	**a**0627
200	␣0	**a**Asurbanipal **c**asirski kralj **f**6..-627? pr. n. št.
		(The year of death of the person, who lived in the 7th century B.C., is unknown.)

7. *

152	␣␣	**a**PPIAK
190	11	**a**1961
191	11	**a**1996 **b**06 **c**03
210	02	**a**Tovarna avtomobilov in motorjev Maribor
		(The date when the corporate body stopped existing under this name is known.)

8. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
190	11	**a**1881

191	11	**a**1941
230	␣␣	**a**Ljubljanski zvon
		(The Ljubljanski zvon *journal was published between 1881 and 1941.)*

192 SUBTYPE OF ENTITY*

This field contains coded data for the subtype of the entity described by the authority record as a whole.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
192		Subtype of entity*	nr
	a	*Subtype of entity*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

192a Subtype of entity

The code indicates the subtype of the entity.

aa	*rulers and members of royal families*
ab	*deities and mythological figures*
ac	*legendary and fictional characters*
ad	*ancient persons*
ae	*pseudonyms*
af	*collective pseudonyms*
ag	*other persons*
ba	*companies, corporations*
bb	*local government bodies*
bc	*musical groups*
bd	*religious administrative units*
be	*projects and project-like programs*
bf	*buildings and architectural ensembles other than geographical names*
bg	*meetings and other similar events*
bh	*individual named vehicles*
bi	*fictitious corporations*
bj	*other corporations*
ca	*countries (excluding ancient states), federal states*
cb	*ancient cities and states*
cc	*local authorities and administrative units*
cd	*natural geographical units, biogeographical and paleogeographical units*
ce	*buildings, architectural ensembles, monuments, sepulchral monuments, etc. (geographical names)*

cf	*smaller geographical units within settlements (excluding buildings and architectural ensembles)*
cg	*boundaries, demarcation lines*
ch	*extraterrestrial space*
ci	*fictitious geographical names*
cj	*other geographical names*
ea	*noble and royal families*
eb	*fictitious families*
ec	*other families*
fa	*individual works (excluding musical works)*
fb	*musical works*
fc	*expressions of works*
fd	*collections*
ja	*ethnic groups*
jb	*persons according to activity, behaviour or conditions*
jc	*parts of organisms*
jd	*chemical elements and compounds*
je	*individual historical events*
jf	*languages*
jg	*products and trademarks (excluding software)*
jh	*software*
ji	*vocal and instrumental mediums of performance*
jj	*musical ensembles*
jk	*other terms*

EXAMPLES

1. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
192	␣␣	**a**bf
210	02	**a**Hutterjev blok **c**Maribor, Slovenija
340	␣␣	**a**Stanovanjski blok v centru Maribora, ki ga je nemški tovarnar Josip Hutter dal zgraditi za svoje zaposlene, arhitekta Jaroslav Černigoj in Aleksander Dev 1940-1944.
		(Since active buildings are treated as corporations in the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), the "bf" code is used in the record for Hutter's block in Maribor.)

2. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
192	␣␣	**a**ce
215	␣␣	**a**Grad Kamen (Begunje na Gorenjskem, Slovenija)
356	␣␣	**a**Zgrajen v 12. stoletju; v 15. stoletju prezidan, po potresu 1511 temeljito obnovljen, v 1. polovici 18. stoletja je začel propadati, zdaj je spomeniško zaščiten; vidne romanske, gotske in renesančne prvine.
		(Since castle ruins are treated as geographical names in the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), the "ce" code is used in the record for Kamen Castle.)

3. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
192	⊔⊔	**a**ab
200	⊔0	**9**slv **a**Triglav **c**slovansko božanstvo

4. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
192	⊔⊔	**a**fb
240	⊔⊔	**9**slv **a**Kogoj, Marij, 1892-1956 **t**Črne maske
300	1⊔	**a**Opera slovenskega komponista Marija Kogoja v 2 dejanjih, po libretu istoimenskega besedila ruskega pisatelja Leonida Andrejeva in v slovenskem prevodu Josipa Vidmarja, v 2 dejanjih in 4 slikah, krstno uprizorjena 7. maja 1929 v Ljubljani.

5. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
192	⊔⊔	**a**ea
220	⊔⊔	**a**Habsburžani **c**vladarska rodbina

6. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
192	⊔⊔	**a**je
250	⊔⊔	**n**b **m**b3 **a**Marčna revolucija (1848-1849)

CONTROL SUBFIELDS

Subfield list

2	System code
3	Record number
5	Relationship control
7	Script of the base access point
8	Language of cataloguing
9	Language of the base access point

These subfields are defined in the same way for all 2XX fields onwards, that is why they are described together on following pages. Control subfields always precede all other subfields in the field.

For particular fields it is indicated which of these subfields may appear in those fields.

SUBFIELD 2 – SYSTEM CODE

The subfield indicates descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system, to which the access point belongs. The subfield is used, when the subject system differs from the system, entered in the field 152.

The subfield can be used in fields 4XX and 7XX.

The following code values are defined:

bnf	*Bibliothèque nationale de France (BNF)*
gnd	*Gemeinsame Normdatei (GND)*
lc	*Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)*
lcgft	*Library of Congress Genre/Form Terms (LCGFT)*
mesh	*Medical Subject Headings (MeSH)*
naf	*Library of Congress/NACO Authority File (LC/NAF)*
nsogi	*Nuovo soggettario (NS)*
ram	*Répertoire d'autorité-matière encyclopédique et alphabétique unifié (RAMEAU)*
sears	*Sears List of Subject Headings (Sears)*
sgce	*COBISS.SI General List of Subject Headings*

EXAMPLES

1. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Sava (vodotok)
715	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Sava River
		(Field 715 contains the English version of the name from field 215.)

SUBFIELD 3 – RECORD NUMBER

This subfield is used in fields 4XX, 5XX and 7XX. It contains the authority record number for the access point from fields 4XX, 5XX (see examples 1 and 3) or 7XX (see example 2).

EXAMPLES

1.

210	01	**a**France **b**Ministère de la culture et de la communication **c**1997-....
510	01	**3**frBN011535673 **5**a **a**France **b**Ministère de la culture **c**1995-1997
		(Authority record with ID "frBN012345678".)

*

210	01	**a**France **b**Ministèrede la culture **c**1995-1997
510	01	**3**frBN012345678 **5**b **a**France **b**Ministère de la culture et de la communication **c**1997-
		(Authority record with ID "frBN011535673".)

2. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Рьорих **b**Елена Ивановна **f**1879-1955
700	␣1	**3**8684645 **7**ca **a**Рерих **b**Елена Ивановна **f**1879-1955
700	␣1	**3**8684645 **7**ba **a**Rerih **b**Elena Ivanovna **f**1879-1955
		(Authority record with ID "8684389".)

*

200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Рерих **b**Елена Ивановна **f**1879-1955
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Rerih **b**Elena Ivanovna **f**1879-1955
700	␣1	**3**8684389 **7**ca **a**Рьорих **b**Елена Ивановна **f**1879-1955
		(Authority record with ID "8684645".)

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Pust
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85020377 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11936675 **5**n **8**fre **a**Carnavals
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA93000244 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Festivali
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). In fields 450, the access point for the term from field 250 is entered and formulated according to the LCSH, RAMEAU and SEARS rules, and subfield 3 with the ID of the corresponding record in these lists. Field 550 contains the access point for the broader term and the corresponding SGC record ID in subfield 3.)

SUBFIELD 5 – RELATIONSHIP CONTROL

This subfield is used in 4XX and 5XX fields. It may contain a code indicating a relationship between an access point in 4XX or 5XX field and the authority access point in field 2XX.

The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase or reference when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase for the reference (see examples 2, 3). The use of the special phrase is optional. It is not incorrect to use the ">" or ">>" instruction alone.

The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying the reference traced, and it is displayed next to the variant or related access point (see examples 2, 3, 9).

For more detailed instructions see *Introduction, Guidelines for Use, Display of Reference and Authority Records*.

The following data elements are defined for subfield 5:

a	earlier name
b	later name
c	official name
d	acronym
e	pseudonym
f	real name
g	broader term
h	narrower term
i	name in religion
j	married name
k	name before marriage
l	shared pseudonym
m	secular name
n	different rule form
xxxc	descendants family relationship
xxxd	progenitor family relationship
xxxe	relationship in marriage
xxxj	sibling relationship
xxxg	parent relationship
xxxh	child relationship
xxxk	member (is member of)
xxxl	has member
xxxm	founder (has founded)
xxxn	founded by
xxxp	subordinate corporate body's name
xxxq	larger corporate body's name
xxxs	owner's name
xxxt	owned by
xxxz	other Agents relationship.
z	other Related term or names relationship.

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes:

Relationship code and relationship information		Reference display instruction phrase from 4XX field	Reference display instruction phrase from 5XX field
a	earlier name	See under later name:	See also under later name:
b	later name	See under earlier name:	See also under earlier name:
c	official name	See under real name:	See also under real name:
d	acronym	See under expanded form:	See also under expanded form:
e	pseudonym	See under real name:	See also under real name:
f	real name	See under pseudonym:	See also under pseudonym:
g	broader term	See under narrower term:	See also under narrower term:
h	narrower term	See under broader term:	See also under broader term:
i	name in religion	See under secular name:	See also under secular name:
j	married name	See under name before marriage:	See also under name before marriage:
k	name before marriage	See under married name:	See also under married name:
l	shared pseudonym	See under authors' real names:	See also under authors' real names:
m	secular name	See under author's name in religion:	See also under author's name in religion:
n	different rule form	See under valid rule form:	See also under valid rule form:
xxxc	descendants family relationship	/	See also under progenitor family name:
xxxd	progenitor family relationship	/	See also under descendant family name:
xxxe	relationship in marriage	/	See also under spouse name:
xxxj	sibling relationship	/	See also under sibling's name:
xxxg	parent relationship	/	See also under child's name:
xxxh	child relationship	/	See also under parent's name:
xxxk	member (is member of)	/	See also under corporate body's name or family name:
xxxl	has member	/	See also under person's name:
xxxm	founder (has founded)	/	See also under name:
xxxn	founded by	/	See also under founder's name:
xxxp	subordinate corporate body's name	/	See also under larger corporate body's name:
xxxq	larger corporate body's name	/	See also under subordinate corporate body's name:
xxxs	owner's name	/	See also under name:
xxxt	owned by	/	See also under owner's name:

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Orwell **b**George
400	␣1	**5**f **a**Blair **b**Eric Arthur
		(Eric Arthur Blair wrote under pseudonym George Orwell.)

2.

200	␣0	**a**Marie de la Trinité **c**dominicaine **f**1904-....
300	0␣	**a**Nom en religion de : Rosa Boiral. - Dominicaine au Monastère Sainte-Catherine de Langeac (43300, Haute-Loire)
400	␣1	**5**m **a**Boiral **b**Rosa

Authority record display:

Marie de la Trinité, dominicaine, 1904

Nom en religion de : Rosa Boiral. - Dominicaine au Monastère Sainte-Catherine de Langeac (43300, Haute-Loire)

< Boiral, Rosa (светско име)

Reference display:

Boiral, Rosa

See under name in religion: > Marie de la Trinité, dominicaine, 1904

3.

210	02	**a**Dunedin Savings Bank
510	02	**5**a **a**Otago Savings Bank

Authority record display:

Dunedin Savings Bank

<< Otago Savings Bank (earlier name)

Reference display:

Otago Savings Bank

See also under later name: >> Dunedin Savings Bank

4.

210	02	**a**Coopération et aménagement **c**France
510	02	**5**a **a**Secrétariat des missions d'urbanisme et d'habitat **c**France

Reference display:

Secrétariat des missions d'urbanisme et d'habitat (France)

See also under later name: >> Coopération et aménagement (France)

5.

152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣0	**a**Marie et Joseph
300	0␣	**a**Auteurs de romans policiers (pour adultes et enfants). - Pseudonyme collectif de Corinne Bouchard (qui écrit aussi sous lenomme Corinne Arbore) (pseudonyme Marie), née le 4 novembre 1958 et de Pierre Mezinski (pseudonyme Joseph), né le

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">1er juillet 1950; commencent à écrie en 1990 séparément sous leurs patronymes, mais n'ont à ce jour jamais écrit séparément sous le prénom choisi par chacum comme pseudonyme.</td></tr>
<tr><td>500</td><td>␣1</td><td>**5**f **a**Bouchard **b**Corinne **f**1958</td></tr>
<tr><td>500</td><td>␣1</td><td>**5**f **a**Mezinski **b**Pierre **f**1950-</td></tr>
</table>

6.

200	␣1	**a**Grimm **b**Jacob
300	0␣	**a**Pisao i u suradnji s bratom Wilhelmom Grimmom
340	␣␣	**a**Grimm, Jakob, njemački filolog i književnik, 1785.-1863.; Grimm, Wilhelm, njemački filolog, brat Jakoba Grimma, 1786.-1859
400	␣0	**a**Grim **c**Braća
400	␣0	**a**Grimm **c**Brothers
400	␣0	**a**Grimm **c**Fratelli
400	␣0	**a**Grimm **c**Freres
400	␣0	**a**Grimm **c**Gebrueder
400	␣0	**a**Grimm **c**Vellezerit
400	␣1	**a**Grimm **b**Jacob
500	␣1	**5**xxxj **a**Grimm **b**Wilhelm
		(Also wrote in collaboration with brother Wilhelm Grimm.)

200	␣1	**a**Grimm **b**Wilhelm
300	0␣	**a**Publikacije svih djela što ih je Wilhelm Grimm pisao zajedno sa svojim bratom treba tražiti pod imenom Jakoba Grimma
400	␣1	**a**Grimm **c**Wilhelm
500	␣1	**5**xxxj **a**Grimm **b**Jakob
		(Publications, which Wilhelm Grimm wrote in collaboration with his brother, see under the name Jacob Grimm.)

7.

220	␣␣	**a**Picot de Gouberville **c**famille
500	␣1	**5**xxxk **a**Gouberville **b**Gilles de **f**1521?-1578

200	␣1	**a**Gouberville **b**Gilles de **f**1521?-1578
520	␣␣	**5**xxxl **a**Picot de Gouberville **c**famille

8.

152	␣␣	**b**nlr_sh
200	␣0	**a**Виктория Федоровна **c**великая киягиня **f**1876-1936
400	␣0	**5**k **a**Виктория Мелита **f**1876-1936
500	␣0	**3**RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264 **5**xxxe **a**Кирилл Владимирович **c**великий киязь **f**1876-1936
520	␣␣	**3**RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026 **5**xxxl **a**Романовы **c**семья
520	␣␣	**3**RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735 **5**xxxl **a**Ганноверская **c**династия английских королей **f**1714-1901

9. *

200	␣1	**a**Bor **b**Matej
400	␣1	**5**f **a**Pavšič **b**Vladimir

Authority record display:

Bor, Matej

<Pavšič, Vladimir (real name)

10. *

250	␣␣	**a**Starodavna likovna umetnost
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Arheološke ostaline
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Starodavne civilizacije
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Zgodovina likovne umetnosti
		(The term Arheološke ostaline *is a related term to the term* Starodavna likovna umetnost*, whereas* Starodavne civilizacije *and* Zgodovina likovne umetnosti *are its broader terms.)*

11. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Pust
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85020377 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11936675 **5**n **8**fre **a**Carnavals
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA93000244 **5**n **8**eng **a**Carnival
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Festivali
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). In fields 450, the access point for the term from the field 250 is entered and formulated according to the LCSH, RAMEAU and SEARS rules. Subfield 5 indicates that this is the same term but that the access point was formulated according to different rules.)

SUBFIELD 7 – SCRIPT OF THE BASE ACCESS POINT

This subfield identifies the scripts of the base access point. It is used when within the COBISS system we create access points in other scripts alongside the access points in the script of cataloguing.

The subfield may be used in 2XX, 4XX, 5XX and 7XX fields. In systems in which they create parallel authorized access points in Cyrillic and Latin scripts the use of subfield 7 is mandatory in the parallel 2XX fields.

For more detailed instruction see chapter *Introduction, Guidelines for Use*.

EXAMPLES

1. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
200	␣1	**a**Papamárkos **b**Dimosthénis
400	␣1	**7**ga **9**gre **a**Παπαμάρκος **b**Δημοσθένης

2. * COBISS.net

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**bul **g**ca
200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Соловьев **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Solov'ev **b**Vladimir Sergeevic **f**1853-1900
400	␣1	**7**ca **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир **f**1853-1900
700	␣␣	**3**1324645 **7**ca **9**bul **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
		(In fields 200 the access points are entered in both Cyrillic and Latin script, and in fields 400 and 700 the access points are entered in Cyrillic script.)

3. * COBISS.net

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**bul **g**ca
200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Кинг **b**Стивън **f**1946-
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**King **b**Stephen **f**1946-
400	␣1	**5**e **7**ca **a**Бакман **b**Ричард
400	␣1	**5**e **7**ba **a**Bachman **b**Richard
		(Both access points – the authorized and the variant access point – are entered in Cyrillic and Latin script.)

4. * COBISS.net

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**srp **g**cb
200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Толстой **b**Лев Николаевич **f**1828-1910
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Tolstoj **b**Lev Nikolaevič **f**1828-1910
400	␣1	**7**cb **9**srp **a**Толстој **b**Лав Николајевич **f**1828-1910
400	␣1	**7**ba **9**srp **a**Tolstoj **b**Lav Nikolajevič **f**1828-1910

5. * COBISS.net

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**srp **g**cb
200	␣1	**7**cb **a**Дибреј **b**Жан-Луи **f**1914-1995
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Dubreuil **b**Jean-Louis **f**1914-1995
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**e **7**cb **9**srp **a**Кампањ **b**Клод
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**e **7**ba **9**fre **a**Campagne **b**Claude

SUBFIELD 8 – LANGUAGE OF CATALOGUING

This subfield is used in fields 7XX and 4XX. It contains the 3-character code for the language of the catalogue, for which the access point in this field is formulated.

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre **a**eng
210	01	**8**fre **9**fre **a**Canada **b**Groupe de travail du Ministre sur la protection des enfants en cas d'accidents de véhicules automobiles
710	01	**8**eng **9**eng **a**Canada **b**Minister's Task Force on Crash Protection for Infant and Child Passengers in Motor Vehicles

2.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**fre **a**eng **a**wel
102	␣␣	**a**int
230	␣␣	**a**Ami et Amile
730	␣␣	**8**eng **9**eng **a**Amis and Amiloun
730	␣␣	**8**wel **9**wel **a**Amlyn ac Amig
		(The works refer to French, English and Welsh literature.)

3.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**lat **a**grc
200	␣0	**8**fre **9**fre **a**Marc Aurèle **c**empereur romain
700	␣0	**8**eng **9**lat **a**Marcus Aurelius Antoninus **c**Emperor of Rome **f**121-180

4.

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**hrv **g**ba
101	␣␣	**a**pol **a**lat **a**ita **a**hrv
102	␣␣	**a**pol **a**vat
200	␣0	**8**hrv **9**lat **a**Iohannes Paulus **d**II **c**papa
700	␣0	**8**fre **9**fre **a**Jean-Paul **d**II **c**pape
700	␣0	**8**eng **9**eng **a**John-Paul **d**II **c**Pope

5. *

250	␣␣	**a**Zimski športi
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85147041 **5**n **8**eng **a**Winter sports
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11950024 **5**n **8**fre **a**Sports d'hiver
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA82005668 **5**n **8**eng **a**Winter sports
750	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Winter sports

SUBFIELD 9 – LANGUAGE OF THE BASE ACCESS POINT

This subfield is used in fields 2XX, 4XX, 5XX and 7XX. It contains a 3-character code for the language of the base access point. The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the entity, excluding any qualifiers. The qualifiers are expressed in the language of cataloguing (see example 1).

EXAMPLES

1.

100	␣␣	**c**fre
200	␣1	**9**ita **a**Nicolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico **c**imprimeur-librarie **f**15-- to 160-?
		(The base access point (subfields a and b) is in Italian. Since French is the language of cataloguing, the qualifier (subfield c) is in French language.)

2.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
200	␣1	**a**Shakespeare **b**William
400	␣1	**9**scr **a**Šekspir **b**Viljem

3.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
200	␣1	**a**Peroci **b**Ela
400	␣1	**9**slo **a**Perocióva **b**Ela
		(The form of female name expressed in Slovak language.)

4.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
200	␣1	**a**Žižek **b**Slavoj **r**09979
400	␣1	**9**jpn **a**Jijeku **b**Suravoi
400	␣1	**9**jpn **a**Jijeku **b**Suravoj
400	␣1	**9**chi **a**Qizeke **b**Silawore
		(Names that are transliterated from Japanese and Chinese.)

5.   * COBISS.net

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**bul **g**ca
200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Соловьев **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Solov'ev **b**Vladimir Sergeevic **f**1853-1900
400	␣1	**7**ca **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
700	␣1	31324645 **7**ca **9**bul **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
		(In field 700 the parallel access point is entered in Bulgarian language.)

6.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
200	␣0	**a**Ostržek **c**izmišljena oseba
700	␣0	**2**sgce **8**eng **9**ita **a**Pinocchio **c**Fictitious character
		(Field 700 contains the form of the name used in English and corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in subfield 200.)

SUBDIVISIONS

List of subfields

j	Form subdivision
x	Topical subdivision
y	Geographical subdivision
z	Chronological subdivision

These subfields can be used in a similar way in different fields for access points, that is why they are described together on the following pages.

In the description of individual fields, you will find the subfields with subdivisions that can be used in them.

SUBFIELD J – FORM SUBDIVISION

This subfield contains a term to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material.

In the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), form subdivisions are used only in access points added to the SGC records from other systems of subject headings (lists of subject headings).

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Shakespeare **b**William **f**1564-1616 **j**Quotations

SUBFIELD J – FORM SUBDIVISION

SUBFIELD X – TOPICAL SUBDIVISION

This subfield contains a term to further specify the topic that the subject access point represents.

In the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), topical subdivisions are used in reference records. In authority records, subfield x can appear in access points added to SGC records from other subject systems and in related access points that appear in the 2XX field in one or more reference records.

EXAMPLES

1.

215	␣1	**a**Ontario **x**Guidebooks

2.

230	␣␣	**a**Bible **x**Music
430	␣␣	**a**Bible **i**O.T. **i**Psalms **x**Music

3.   *

250	␣␣	**a**Trgatev
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85056463 **5**n **8**eng **a**Grapes **x**Harvesting

SUBFIELD Y – GEOGRAPHICAL SUBDIVISION

This subfield contains a term to specify the location connected to the entity represented by the subject access point.

In the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), geographical subdivisions are used in reference records. In authority records, subfield y can appear in access points added to SGC records from other subject systems and in related access points that appear in the 2XX field in one or more reference records.

EXAMPLES

1.

250	␣1	**a**Education **y**Italy

2.   *

250	␣␣	**a**Francoska folklora
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85050117 **5**n **8**eng **a**Folklore **y**France

SUBFIELD Z – CHRONOLOGICAL SUBDIVISION

This subfield contains a term to specify the time period connected to the entity that the subject access point represents.

In the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), chronological subdivisions are used in reference records. In authority records, subfield z can appear in access points added to SGC records from other subject systems and in related access points that appear in the 2XX field in one or more reference records.

EXAMPLES

1.

215	␣1	**a**Ontario **x**History **z**1801-1900

2.   *

250	␣␣	**a**Filozofija **z**17. stoletje
450	␣␣	**a**Moderna filozofija **z**17. stoletje
450	␣␣	**a**Novoveška filozofija **z**17. stoletje
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85100961 **5**n **8**eng **a**Philosophy, Modern **z**17th century
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF12068081 **5**n **8**fre **a**Philosophie **z**17e siecle

2XX AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

FIELD LIST

200 Authorized access point – personal name
210 Authorized access point – corporate body name
215 Authorized access point – territorial or geographical name
220 Authorized access point – family name
230 Authorized access point – title
240 Authorized access point – name/title
243 Authorized access point – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts
250 Authorized access point – topical subject
280 Authorized access point – form, genre or physical characteristics

This block contains the access point for which the record is made. The access point will be an authorized access point if the record is an authority record, a variant access point if the record is a reference record, and an explanatory access point if the record is a general explanatory record.

Each record must contain one field from the 2XX block. The 2XX fields can only be repeated in COBISS systems, in which access points in different scripts are required.

The following control subfields are used in the 2XX fields:

7	*Script of the base access point*
9	*Language of the base access point*

The use of control subfields is described in the *Control subfields* chapter (before the 2XX block).

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

This field contains a personal name access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
200		Authorized access point – personal name	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Part of name (not entry element)*	nr
	c	*Additions other than dates*	r
	d	*Roman numerals*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	r	*Researcher code**	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name entered under forename or direct order*
	1	*name entered under surname*

The indicator specifies wheather the name is entered in direct order (only a forename or a forename and a surname) or under a surname (a surname and a forename).

SUBFIELDS

For more detailed information about subfields 7 and 9 see chapter *Control subfields*.

200a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point that enables both search and sort within the catalogue. Subfield is mandatory.

200b Part of name (not entry element)

The reminder of the name (forename or names), used when the entry element is a surname or family name (see examples 1, 3, 4, 8, 10, 11, 12). If this subfield is entered the value of the indicator should be set to "1".

200c Additions other than dates

Any additions to name which do not form an integral part of the name itself, including titles, epithets or other indications (see examples 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 11, 15, 16). Subfield is repeatable for second or subsequent additions (see examples 4, 5).

200d Roman numerals

Roman mumerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (see examples 2, 9). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (see example 6). The form of name indicator should be set to "0" when this subfield is used.

200f Dates

The dates attached to personal names (see examples 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 10, 12). Any indications of the type of date (e.g. born, died, flourished) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (see example 7).

200r Researcher code*

This subfield is designated for maintaining researchers' bibliographies within the COBISS system. This field is mandatory in records for all researchers that are registered at the competent ministry. The global researchers' code list is generated from the official registers of the ministry containing following data: researcher code, researcher surname and forename, maiden name, year of birth and research area (see example 12).

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains the preferred form of a personal name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the personal name are a, b and d.

The field is repeatable in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in different scripts.

RELATED FIELDS

400 *VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

500 *RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

700 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Horne, **b**Donald, **f**1921- |

2.

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**Alexander **d**I, **c**Emperor of Russia, **f**1771-1825 |

3.

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Riano y Montero, **b**Juan Facundo, **f**1828-1901 |

4.

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Arundel, **b**Philip Howard, **c**Saint, **c**Earl of |

5.

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**Alexandra, **c**Empress, **c**Consort of Nicholas II, Emperor of Russia |

6.

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**John **d**II Comnenus, **c**Emperor of the East |

7.

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**Joannes, **c**Diaconus, **f**fl. 1226-1240 |

8. *

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Milčinski **b**Frane **f**1914-1988 |

9. *

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**JoannesPaulus **d**II **c**papež |

10. *

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Bešter **b**Janez **f**11.9.1955- |

*

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Bešter **b**Janez **f**4.6.1955-
(If two persons of the same name are born on the same year, the complete date of birth is used for more exact identification.) |

11. *

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Pirnat **b**Miha **c**ml. |

*

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Pirnat **b**Miha **c**st. |

12. *

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Novak **b**Helena **f**1934- **r**04278 |

13. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**cb **a**Нушић **b**Бранислав **f**1864-1938
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Nušić **b**Branislav **f**1864-1938
		(The field 200 should be repeated only for the authorized access point in other script. The code for the script of the base access point is mandatory for alternative scripts.)

14. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Достоевский **b**Федор Михайлович **f**1821-1881
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Dostoevskij **b**Fedor Mihajlovic **f**1821-1881
700	␣1	**3**10126949 **7**ca **9**bul **a**Достоевски **b**Фьодор Михайлович **f**1821-1881
		(The authorized access points are entered in alternative scripts, e. g. Cyrillic and Latin script. Within the COBISS.BG system it is also a third authorized access point used, which should be entered in Bulgarian Cyrillic script. It is therefore entered in a separate record. Records are linked through the field 700.)

*

200	␣1	**7**ca **9**bul **a**Достоевски **b**Фьодор Михайлович **f**1821-1881
700	␣1	**3**10127205 **7**ca **a**Достоевский **b**Федор Михайлович **f**1821-1881
700	␣1	**3**10127205 **7**ba **a**Dostoevskij **b**Fedor Mihajlovic **f**1821-1881
		(The authorized access point is entered in Bulgarian Cyrillic script. The record is linked with the original form of the personal name in Russian Cyrillic script and the alternative transliterated form in Latin script through the fields 700.)

15. *

| 200 | ␣0 | **a**Dioniz **c**grško božanstvo |
| | | *(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)* |

16. *

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Brilej **b**Roman **c**matematik |

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Brilej **b**Roman **c**publicist |
| | | *(Namesakes can also be differentiated by a term stating their occupation, etc., when the year of their birth/death is unknown, or when the author does not allow the public disclosure of their birth year.)* |

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

This field contains a corporate or meeting name access point.

Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 210). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 215).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
210		Authorized access point – corporate body name	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Subdivision*	r
	c	*Addition to name or qualifier*	r
	d	*Number of meeting*	nr
	e	*Location of meeting*	r
	f	*Date of meeting*	nr
	g	*Inverted element*	nr
	h	*Part of name (not entry or inverted element)*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***The kind of corporate body***
	0	*corporate name*
	1	*meeting*
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name in inverted form*
	1	*name entered under place or jurisdiction*
	2	*name entered under name in direct order*

The first indicator indicates whether the corporate body is a meeting (conference, symposium, etc.) or not. If the meeting is subordinated to the corporate body, specify it as a corporate name (see example 4).

The second indicator indicates the form or the type of entry of the corporate name.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields x and z are described in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 7 and 9 in the *Control subfields* chapter.

210a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point that enables both search and sort within the catalogue. Subfield is mandatory.

210b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy (see examples 1, 9) or the name of the corporate body which is subordinate to the governmental body (see examples 2, 7, 11). This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see examples c, g, h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

210c Addition to name or qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of meeting (see examples 3, 4, 8, 9, 12).

210d Number of meeting

The number of a meeting (see examples 4, 10).

210e Location of meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point (see examples 4, 5, 10).

210f Date of meeting

The date when a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point (see examples 4, 5, 10).

210g Inverted element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the corporate body under a word which is more likely to be sought. This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points (see example 4 at field 410).

210h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)

In a heading with an inverted element, the part of the name which is not the entry or inverted element.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the corporate body name are a, b, g and h.

The field is repeatable in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in different scripts.

RELATED FIELDS

150	*CODED DATA FOR CORPORATE NAME*
410	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*
510	*RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*
710	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

210	02	**a**Brunel University. **b**Education Liaison Centre

2.

210	01	**a**Ontario. **b**Office of Arbitration

3.

210	02	**a**Pomorski muzej **c**(Kotor)

4.

210	02	**a**Labour Party **c**(Great Britain). **b**Conference **d**(72nd; **f**1972 ; **e**Blackpool, Lancashire)

5.

| 210 | 12 | **a**North Carolina Conference on Water Conservation **f**(1975 ; **e**Raleigh) |

6.

| 210 | 02 | **a**Church of England |

7.

| 210 | 01 | **a**United States **b**Army |

8.

| 210 | 02 | **a**Goriški muzej **c**Nova Gorica
(A geographical name is added to the corporate body name as a qualifier.) |

9.

| 210 | 02 | **a**Gospodarska zbornica Slovenije **b**Območna zbornica Zasavje **c**Trbovlje
(A dependant corporate body which identifies itself with superior institution.) |

10.

| 210 | 12 | **a**Ortopedski dnevi **d**19 **f**2001 **e**Ljubljana
(A meeting is determined by number, location and date of meeting.) |

11.

| 210 | 01 | **a**Slovenija **b**Slovenska vojska
(A corporate body is an agency of a governmental body.) |

12. *

| 210 | 02 | **a**Avrora **c**križarka
(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).) |

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

This field contains a territorial or geographical name access point.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 215). Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 210). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
215		Authorized access point – territorial or geographical name	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields x and z are described in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfield 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

215a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point that enables both searching and sorting within the catalogue. Subfield is mandatory.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a territorial or geographical name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

In the *General List of Subject Headings (SGC)*, the topical and chronological subdivisions are used only in reference records.

RELATED FIELDS

415   *VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

515   *RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

715   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
            TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**United States **x**History |

2.

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Ontario **x**Guidebooks |

3.

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Ontario **x**History **z**1801-1900 |

4.

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Rocky Mountains |

5.   *

| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Ištarina vrata (Babilon) |

6.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Glinje (Občina Braslovče, Slovenija)
		(Record for the place Glinje *in the Savinjska Region.)*

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Glinje (Občina Cerklje na Gorenjskem, Slovenija)
		(Record for the place Glinje *in the Gorenjska Region.)*

7.   *

| 152 | ␣␣ | **b**sgc |
| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Luna |

8.   *

| 152 | ␣␣ | **b**sgc |
| 215 | ␣␣ | **a**Krka (Slovenija : vodotok) |

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

This field contains a family name access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
220		Authorized access point – family name	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	c	*Type of family*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield 9 is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

220a Entry element

The family name as a search element. Subfield is mandatory.

220c Type of family

A generic descriptor for the type of family that includes categories such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc.

220f Dates

Dates associated with the family when they are required as part of the access point (see example 2).

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a family name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the family name is subfield a.

RELATED FIELDS

420	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*
520	*RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*
720	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

220	⊔⊔	**a**Duecker **c**Family

2.

220	⊔⊔	**a**Pahlavi **c**Dynasty **f**1925-1979

3.

220	⊔⊔	**a**Bragança **c**Casa de

4. *

220	⊔⊔	**9**ita **a**Coronini **c**plemiška rodbina
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

5. *

220	⊔⊔	**a**Habsburžani **c**vladarska rodbina
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

This field contains a title access point. The title access point is intended to bring together records for issues of a work that has been published under different titles, or records for items in series.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
230		Authorized access point – title	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	h	*Number of section or part*	r
	i	*Name of section or part*	r
	k	*Date of publication*	nr
	l	*Form subheading*	nr
	m	*Language*	nr
	n	*Miscellaneous information*	r
	q	*Version (or date of version)*	nr
	r	*Medium of performance (for music)*	r
	s	*Numeric designation (for music)*	r
	u	*Key (for music)*	nr
	w	*Arranged statement (for music)*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield 9 is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

230a Entry element

The title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. The subfield is mandatory.

230h Number of section or part

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title (see example 8). Repeatable for a subdivided part (see example 9).

230i Name of section or part

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title (see example 9). Repeatable for a subdivided part.

230k Date of publication

Date of publication when it is added to the title.

230l Form subheading

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title (see example 1).

230m Language

The language of the item when required as part of the title (see examples 1, 4, 8). If the work is in more than one language, enter all languages in a single subfield m (see example 11)

230n Miscellaneous information

Information that cannot be entered in any other subfield.

230q Version (or date of version)

An identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version (see example 1).

230r Medium of performance (for music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the item (see example 10).

230s Numeric designation (for music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number (see example 10).

230u Key (for music)

The musical key used as part of the title (see example 10).

230w Arranged statement (for music)

The statement that a musical work is an arrangement (see example 2).

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the title are a, i and h.

RELATED FIELDS

430	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE*
530	*RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*
730	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

230	␣␣	**a**Bible **m**English **q**Authorized **l**Selections

2.

230	␣␣	**a**God save the King **w**arr

3.

230	␣␣	**a**Crónica de los Reyes de Castilla

4.

230	␣␣	**a**Juliana **m**Middle English

5.

154	␣␣	**a**a
230	␣␣	**a**CBMS regional conference series in mathematics

6.

154	␣␣	**a**b
230	␣␣	**a**Cambridge history of Iran

7.

| 154 | ␣␣ | **ac** |
| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Viking books |

8.

| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Iliad **h**Book 24 **m**English |

9.

| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Pièces de viole **h**4e livre **h**23e partie **i**Arabesque |

10.

| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Concertos **r**oboes(2), string orchestra sop.9, no.3 **u**F major |

11.

| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**≠Le ≠malade imaginaire **m**English & French |

12. *

| 230 | ␣␣ | **a**Kumranski rokopisi |

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

This field contains a name/title access point. A name/title access point is intended to bring together the records for various issues of a work or items in series.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
240		Authorized access point – name/title	nr
	a	*Name*	nr
	t	*Title*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield 9 is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

240a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield t. When subfield a is a composite of more than one standard subfield, use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements.

240t Title

The title by which the work is known. When subfield t is a composite of more than one standard subfield, use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a name/title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

440	*VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*
540	*RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*
740	*AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/ TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

240	␣␣	**a**Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791) **t**Don Giovanni. KV527 (Prague)

2. *

240	␣␣	**a**Cankar, Ivan, 1876-1918 **t**Na klancu

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

This field contains the authorized access point for a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature, issued under a given jurisdiction (usually a country) or a church. The authorized access points for legal and religious texts are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction or church and the conventional title.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
243		Authorized access point – conventional name/ title for legal and religious texts	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	t	*Conventional title*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	1	*Name entered under country or other geographical name*
	2	*Name entered under other form*

Value "1" of the second indicator is used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value "2" of the second indicator is used for church names.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield 9 is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

243a Entry element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction, under which all laws and other legislation are issued. The subfield is mandatory.

243t Conventional title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a conventional name/title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

443   *VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

543   *RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

743   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

EXAMPLES

1.

| 243 | ␣1 | **a**Portugal **t**Leis, decretos, etc. |

2. *

| 106 | ␣␣ | **a**2 |
| 243 | ␣1 | **a**Francija **t**Ustava (1791) |

3. *

| 106 | ␣␣ | **a**2 |
| 243 | ␣1 | **a**Ljubljana (Slovenija ; mestna občina) **t**Statuti |

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

This field contains a subject access point in the form of a topical subject.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
250		Authorized access point – topical subject	nr
	a	*Topical subject*	nr
	n	*Subject category code*	nr
	m	*Subject subcategory code*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields x, y and z are described in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfield 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

250a Topical subject

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points used.

250n Subject category code

The code indicates the subject category.

a	*agents*
	Terms representing (individual or collective) agents, representatives or performers of, or participants in an activity: people and groups, organisations and organisms.
b	*actions*
	Terms for different types of activity: activities, disciplines and processes.
c	*things*
	Terms relating to tangible or abstract entities: forms, structures, objects, space, matter and instruments.
d	*time*

	Terms relating to time: periods and other chronological terms.

250m Subject subcategory code

The code indicates the subject subcategory.

a1	*people and groups*
	Groups of people not belonging to any organisation, and individuals as part of a group that is determined on the basis of a specific characteristic such as behaviour, activity or condition (legal, employment, social or civil status, physical and mental state, kinship, gender, age, geographical or national origin). Examples: Geologists, Unemployed, Single Men, Slovenian women.
a2	*organisations*
	Communities of people with a common goal regardless of how and with what purpose they are organised. Organisations in different sectors of activity, public institutions and parts of organisations. Examples: Health facilities, Cultural institutions, Museums, Courts.
	Exceptions: groups of people that are not organised are classified as "a1"; organisations where the physical structure (e.g. factories) is more important that the organisational aspect (e.g. libraries) are classified as "c2"; economic activities as such (e.g. food processing industry) – and not organisations in the role of collective agents within this activity (e.g. food businesses) – are classified as "b1".
a3	*organisms*
	Living organisms (microorganisms, plants, animals, humans), their anatomical parts and groups of organisms. Examples: Fossils, Cherry tree, Atlantic canary, Neanderthals, Shoulder joint, Hunting dogs, Animal colonies.
	Exceptions: groups of people are classified as "a1"; communities of plants (forests, etc.) are classified as "c4"; basic chemical components are classified as "c5".
b1	*activities*
	Actions performed by a clearly defined direct agent, mainly terms from different disciplines or areas: arts and literature, science and technology, economy, law, history, society, military, politics, religion, information sciences, sex, sports and recreation, performing activities, mental activities, etc. General terms such as action, use, etc. also fall in this category. Examples: Music, Technological innovations, Veganism, Cataloging, Olympics, Tennis, Battle of Actium (Rome, 31 B.C.).
	Exceptions: actions without a direct agent that are the result of a certain cause (natural, social, etc.) are classified as "b3"; when they overlap with other terms, the latter take precedence.
b2	*disciplines*
	Actions relating to research activities and to collection and dissemination of knowledge, with a formalized organisational structure (research centres, university institutes, scientific publications, etc.). Science, humanities and social sciences, medicine, engineering and generally applicable disciplines (e.g. statistics, information sciences) all fall in this category. Examples: Paleontology, Lexicology, Ethics, Bibliography, Environmental sciences, Criminal law.
	Exceptions: pseudo-disciplines (e.g. astrology) and disciplines where the practical components take clear precedence over research (e.g. surgery) are classified as "b1".
b3	*processes*
	Actions that are not induced by a single agent (person or organisation) but are the result of a different (natural or social) cause. Biological processes (e.g. diseases) and social processes (e.g. cultural movements) are typical examples. Different processes such as physical,

	biological, chemical, psychological, environmental, economic, cultural, historical, etc., fall in this category. Examples: Aging, Tropical cyclones, Peace, Buddhism, Religion and social problems, Epidemics, World War (1939–1945).	
	Exceptions: actions not caused by a single agent where the processual aspect is not in the forefront are classified as "b1".	
c1	*forms*	
	Material or abstract entities or entities that are the result of human creativity and have their form of expression (writing, music, etc.). Headings for "genres" and "forms" that represent documents in a material manner as a physical form (object of the form) or in an abstract manner as a form of intellectual activity (message of the form) fall in this category. Represented here are different areas of communication: language (scripts, rhetorical figures, languages), arts and performative activities (screenplays, portraits), literature (literary types and genres, folk literature), music (musical genres and works). Examples: Books, Metonymy, Slovenian language, Translations into French, Fairy tales, Symphony.	
	Documents in which the physical form is not of primary relevance but are mainly used as a means to an end (e.g. statutes) are classified as "c6".	
c2	*structures*	
	Immovable things that can be touched. They can occupy space permanently or temporarily (e.g. a building site). Constructions (e.g. buildings) and infrastructure fall in this category. Examples: Amphitheatres, Laboratories, Balconies, Altars, Structural frames, Fortifications, Canals.	
c3	*objects*	
	Movable things that can be touched. Things of enormous proportions also fall in this category if they are at least potentially movable. The physical aspect is predominant. Examples: Talismans, Guitar, Antiquities, MAN trucks, Airplanes.	
	Exceptions: objects that are immovable are classified as "c2" (if their characteristics overlap, objects take precedence over structures); physical storage devices where the emphasis is on data content or message are classified as "c1".	
c4	*space*	
	Terms relating to environment, landscapes, areas and other terms relating to range, excluding the entities occupying that space. All terms relating to the universe also fall in this category. Examples: Gardens, Villages, Health resorts, European Union countries, Earth, Atmosphere, Stars.	
	Exceptions: things that permanently occupy physical space that is fundamentally changed because of human interference and not just the result of a changing landscape are classified as "c2". Built-up areas (e.g. residential area, urban area) are classified as "c2", when the building aspect takes precedence over the spatial nature of the term, that is if they are represented from an architectural and engineering aspect rather than from a social, urbanistic or ecological aspect.	
c5	*matter*	
	Terms relating to matter (composition, characteristics, physical state) and substances: chemical elements, chemical and physical substances and products or materials that underwent certain transformation but are not objects yet (extracts, processed products, intermediate goods). Products that retain the nature of matter despite undergoing transformation also fall in this category (foodstuffs, medicinal products, etc.). Examples: Microstructure, Physical properties, Sodium, Minerals, Water, Smog, Atoms, Vitamin C, Honey, Wine, Mutton, Cherries (Fruits), Antibiotics.	
	Exceptions: finished goods are classified as "c3"; immaterial products of human activity are classified as "c6" or "c1".	
c6	*instruments*	
	Things, elements, situations and abstract terms that are used as a means to an end. Their object component is of secondary importance (e.g. although balances and acts are documents they primarily function as accounting and legal means). Generally applicable, valuating and other	

		means related to disciplines and activities such as economic and legal means, philosophical means and scientific and technological means with their concepts, methods and theories all fall in this category. Examples: Money, Income, Capital market, Liability (Law), Legislation, Women's rights, Being, Scholasticism, Avogadro's law, Darwinism, Set theory.
		Exceptions: documents whose physical form is the predominant aspect and are not primarily a means to an end are classified as "c1".
d1		*periods*
		Time intervals and periods in human history and history of the Earth. Examples: Days, August, Summer, Advent, Puberty, Age, Neolithic period, Middle Ages, 1st century, 1980 (Year), Holy Year (2000).
d2		*other chronological terms*
		General terms where the temporal aspect is in the forefront. Examples: Punctuality, Tardiness, Hours of labor, Anniversaries, Holidays.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a topical subject access point formulated in accordance with the subject system.

In the *General List of Subject Headings (SGC)*, the subdivisions are used only in reference records.

RELATED FIELDS

450   *VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

550   *RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

750   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

EXAMPLES

1.

250	␣␣	**a**Education **y**Italy

2.

250	␣␣	**a**Construction industry **x**Law and legislation

3.

250	␣␣	**a**Biology **x**Periodicals

4.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**n**b **m**b2 **a**Antropologija

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nb m**b3 **a**Organska sinteza (kemija)

6. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nc m**c3 **a**Trobila

7. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nb m**b1 **a**Železniški promet

8. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**n**a **m**a2 **a**Supermarketi

9. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nc m**c6 **a**Linux (operacijski sistem)

10. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nc m**c2 **a**Železobetonske stavbe

11. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**nc m**c4 **a**Velemesta

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This field contains a term or terms indicating the form, genre or physical characteristics used as an access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
280		Authorized access point – form, genre or physical characteristics	nr
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields x, y and z are described in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfield 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

280a Entry element

The term in the form prescribed by the subject system used.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains the preferred form of a form, genre or physical characteristics formulated in accordance with the subject system.

In the *General List of Subject Headings (SGC)*, the subdivisions are used only in reference records.

RELATED FIELDS

152   *RULES*

180   *CODED DATA FOR FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

250   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

480   *VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

580   *RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

780   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

EXAMPLES

1.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbgenr
280	⯊⯊	**a**Emblem books **y**Germany **z**17th century
		(A form access point constructed according to Genre terms: thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing*.)*

2.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbgenr
280	⯊⯊	**a**Dictionaries **y**French **z**18th century
		(French Dictionary published in 1770.)

3.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbpap
280	⯊⯊	**a**British marbled papers **y**Germany **z**17th century
		(The term indicating physical characteristics of the item constructed according to Paper terms: thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing*.)*

4.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbtyp
280	⯊⯊	**a**Old style types

5.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbprov
280	⯊⯊	**a**Armorial bookplates

6.

152	⯊⯊	**b**rbpri
280	⯊⯊	**a**Manuscript corrections

7. *

152	⯊⯊	**b**sgc
280	⯊⯊	**a**Razstavni katalogi

8. *

152	⯊⯊	**b**sgc
280	⯊⯊	**a**Kitajske pravljice

9. *

152	⯊⯊	**b**sgc
280	⯊⯊	**a**Kvarteti (klavir, violine (3))

10. *

001	␣␣	**an by cl**
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Glasba **z**20. stoletje
		(Reference record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

3XX NOTES BLOCK

FIELD LIST

300   Information note
305   Textual see also reference note
310   Textual see reference note
320   General explanatory reference note
330   General scope note
340   Biography and activity note
356   Geographical note

Information notes are used in an *authority* record to provide historical information about an access point or to provide information when simple references generated from variant or related access points do not explain adequately a relationship. An information note in a *reference* record explains relationships between the reference access point and the authorized access point(s) to which the user of the reference is directed. Information notes in *general explanatory* records give the conventions used in formulating or filing authorized access points of the type one might expect to find under the form given in the explanatory access point.

Notes within the 3XX block are in textual form suitable for display to the public. Notes intended primarily to guide cataloguers are carried in the 8XX Source Information Block.

300 INFORMATION NOTE

This field is used in an authority or a reference record to assist in explaining the relationship between the 2XX access point and other entities (see examples 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7). This field is also used to provide information which helps to identify an access point (see example 3).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
300		Information note	r
	a	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		*The type of note*
	0	*note concerns non-subject use of access point*
	1	*note concerns subject use of access point*
2		*Not defined*

SUBFIELDS

300a Note text

An information note in the language of cataloguing.

EXAMPLES

1.

200	⊔1	**a**Ørn, **b**B.
300	0⊔	**a**Joint pseudonymofMette Bader, Hans Jørn Christensen, Jørgen Døør and others.
500	⊔1	**5**f **a**Bader, **b**Mette
500	⊔1	**5**f **a**Christensen, **b**Hans Jørn
500	⊔1	**5**f **a**Døør, **b**Jørgen, **f**1933-

*

200	⊔1	**a**Bader, **b**Mette
500	⊔1	**5**l **a**Ørn, **b**B.

*

200	⊔1	**a**Christensen, **b**Hans Jørn

500	⎵1	**5**l **a**Ørn, **b**B.

*

200	⎵1	**a**Døør, **b**Jørgen, **f**1933-
500	⎵1	**5**l **a**Ørn, **b**B.

2.

210	01	**a**Ontario. **b**Office of Arbitration
300	0⎵	**a**Replaced Ontario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission on Sept. 1, 1979.
510	02	**5**a **a**Ontario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission

*

210	02	**a**Ontario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission
300	0⎵	**a**Replaced by Ontario. Office of Arbitration on Sept. 1, 1979.
510	01	**5**b **a**Ontario. **b**Office of Arbitration

3.

210	01	**a**Canada. **b**Royal Commission on Banking Finance
300	0⎵	**a**Established Oct. 18, 1961. Final report submitted Feb. 4, 1964. Chairman: Dana Harris Porter. *(Example of a note without references.)*

4.   *

200	⎵1	**a**Paganel **b**Jožef
300	0⎵	**a**Jožef Paganel je skupni psevdonim Emila Filipčiča in Branka Gradišnika
500	⎵1	**5**f **a**Filipčič **b**Emil
500	⎵1	**5**f **a**Gradišnik **b**Branko

5.   *

200	⎵1	**a**Cevc **b**Emilijan **r**02122
300	0⎵	**a**Psevdonimi pri leposlovju in prevodih
400	⎵1	**5**e **a**Rošte **b**Vlado
400	⎵1	**5**e **a**Skržolec **b**Janez
400	⎵1	**5**e **a**Zakalar **b**Joža
400	⎵1	**5**e **a**Kosem **b**Peter

6.   *

152	⎵⎵	**b**sgc
250	⎵⎵	**a**Kmečka vojna (1524-1525)
300	1⎵	**a**Kmečki upor v srednji in južni Nemčiji 1524-1525 proti zbiranju moči v rokah deželnih gospodov; največja ljudska vstaja v nemški zgodovini nasploh.

7.   *

152	⎵⎵	**b**sgc
250	⎵⎵	**a**Potočka zijalka (Slovenija : arheološko najdišče)
300	1⎵	**a**Jama na Olševi, Slovenija; arheološko najdišče iz mlajšega paleolitika; med letoma 1928-1935 ga je raziskoval Srečko Brodar.

305 TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE

This field is used in an authority record when an adequate see also reference note cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 5XX related access point field(s) contained in authority records for the related access points. Each authorized access point referred to and the "see also" (or similar) instruction is given in field 305.

If the note does not refer directly to other authorized access points but only gives examples, the corresponding related access points are not mentioned in 5XX fields.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
305		Textual see also reference note	r
	a	*Instruction phrase*	nr
	b	*Access point referred to*	r

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		*The type of note*
	0	*note concerns non-subject use of access point*
	1	*note concerns subject use of access point*
2		*Not defined*

SUBFIELDS

305a Instruction phrase

A see also reference instruction phrase.

305b Access point referred to

The related access point to be searched under in the catalogue. Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation.

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Page, **b**H.A.
305	0␣	**a**For works of this author written under his real name, see also **b**Japp, Alexander H.
305	0␣	**a**For works written under another pseudonym, see also **b**Gray, E. Condor.

2.

200	␣␣	**a**Collectors and collecting
305	1␣	**a**See also subdivisions **b**Collectors and collecting **a**and **b**Collection and preservation **a**under names of objects collected, e.g., **b**Postage stamps—Collectors and collecting, **b**Zoological specimens—Collection and preservation. *(This note includes examples but does not point to other specific authorized access points, thus there are no 5XX related access point fields in records for the access point given as example. Those records should contain field 825 that cites this record.)*

250	␣␣	**a**Postage stamps
825	␣␣	**a**Example under Collectors and collecting.

3. *

250	␣␣	**a**Ptice plenivke
305	1␣	**a**Glej tudi imena posameznih ptic plenivk, npr. **b**Jastrebi **b**Sove *(Note in field 305 does not refer directly to another access point.)*

4. *

250	␣␣	**a**Pomorske operacije in bitke
305	1␣	**a**Glej tudi imena posameznih pomorskih operacij ali bitk, npr. **b**Bitka pri Trafalgarju (1805)
305	1␣	**a**Glej tudi gesla vrste "[Pridevnik za ime države] pomorske operacije", npr. **b**Japonske pomorske operacije *(Notes in field 305 do not refer directly to other authorized access points. The first note includes several examples.)*

5. *

250	␣␣	**a**Afričani
305	1␣	**a**Glej tudi imena afriških ljudstev, npr. **b**Bantuji **b**Grmičarji (afriško ljudstvo)
305	1␣	**a**Glej tudi gesla, ki se začenjajo z Afrišk- *(Notes in field 305 do not refer directly to other authorized access points. The first note includes several examples, whereas the second includes none.)*

310 TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE

This field is used in a reference record when an adequate see reference cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 4XX field(s). Each access point referred to and the "see" (or similar) instruction is given in field 310.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
310		Textual see reference note	r
	a	*Instruction phrase*	r
	b	*Access point referred to*	r

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***The type of note***
	1	*note concerns subject use of access point*
2		***Not defined***

SUBFIELDS

310a Instruction phrase

A see reference instruction phrase.

310b Access point referred to

The authorized access point to be searched under in the catalogue. Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

In the *General List of Subject Headings (SGC)*, an access point from a 2XX field in a reference record never simultaneously functions as a variant access point in a 4XX field in any of the authority records referred to in field 310.

EXAMPLES

1. *

250	␣␣	**a**Kmetijske subvencije
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Kmetijstvo **a**+ **b**Subvencije
		(The access point from a reference record cannot be added as a variant access point to any of the two authority records. Instead of the access point from a reference record, a combination of access points from authority records is used in subject indexing.)

250	␣␣	**a**Kmetijstvo
		(Authority record.)

250	␣␣	**a**Subvencije
		(Authority record.)

2. *

250	␣␣	**a**Vojaške operacije in bitke **y**Rim
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Vojaške operacije in bitke **a**+ **b**Rim
		(The access point from a reference record cannot be added as a variant access point to any of the two authority records. Instead of the access point from a reference record, a combination of access points from authority records is used in subject indexing.)

250	␣␣	**a**Vojaške operacije in bitke
		(Authority record.)

250	␣␣	**a**Rim
		(Authority record.)

3. *

250	␣␣	**a**Recepcija književnosti
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Književnost **a**+ **b**Recepcija (umetnost)
		(The access point from a reference record cannot be added as a variant access point to any of the two authority records. Instead of the access point from a reference record, a combination of access points from authority records is used in subject indexing.)

250	␣␣	**a**Književnost
		(Authority record.)

250	␣␣	**a**Recepcija (umetnost)
		(Authority record.)

4. *

215	␣␣	**a**Benetke (Italija) **z**16. stoletje
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Benetke (Italija) **a**+ **b**Zgodovina **a**+ **b**1500-1599

> *(The access point from a reference record cannot be added as a variant access point to any of the two authority records. Instead of the access point from a reference record, a combination of access points from authority records is used in subject indexing. Authority records are not used for chronological subdivisions.)*

215	␣␣	**a**Benetke (Italija)
		(Authority record.)

250	␣␣	**a**Zgodovina
		(Authority record.)

320 GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE

This field is used in general explanatory records to provide explanatory information to assist in searching or filing. The word or phrase referred from is entered in field 2XX, and the explanatory information is given in field 320.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
320		General explanatory reference note	r
	a	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

320a Note text

The text of the explanatory note.

EXAMPLES

1.

001	␣␣	**b**z
200	␣0	**a**De la
320	␣␣	**a**For names beginning with a prefix, search under the prefix (under each element if the prefix is made up of multiple words) as well as under the name following the prefix.
		(The code in subfield 001b indicates a general explanatory record. The note contains instructions for searching personal names that begin with a prefix.)

330 GENERAL SCOPE NOTE

This field is used in an authority record to describe the scope of the access point in field 2XX. Scope information may give a precise definition of a potentially ambiguous term, contrasting information about similar terms, notices to users, etc.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
330		General scope note	r
	a	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		*The type of note*
	0	*note concerns non-subject use of access point*
	1	*note concerns subject use of access point*
2		*Not defined*

SUBFIELDS

330a Note text

The text of the scope note.

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣0	**a**Étienned'Athènes
330	0␣	**a**Ne pas confondre avec Stephanus Alexandrinus, du Ier siècle, commentateur d'Aristote

2. *

200	␣1	**a**Lampe Kajtna **b**Mojca
330	0␣	**a**Ne zamenjuj z Lampe Mojca

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Električni aparati

| 330 | 1␣ | **a**Pod tem geslom najdemo dela o malih električnih strojih in napravah. Dela o velikih strojih, gnanih z elektriko, najdemo pod Električni stroji. |

4. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Balade (Vokalna glasba)
330	1␣	**a**Pod tem geslom najdemo zbirke vokalnih skladb na besedila balad; pod tem geslom in geslom Glasbene študije najdemo tudi dela o teh skladbah. Instrumentalne skladbe najdemo pod Balade (instrumentalna glasba).
330	1␣	**a**Balade v določenem jeziku najdemo pod dodatnim geslom vrste "[Pridevnik za ime jezika] balade" oz. "[Pridevnik za ime jezika] balade in romance", npr. Balade (vokalna glasba) / Staronordijske balade; Balade (vokalna glasba) / Slovenske balade in romance.

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

This field is used in an authority record to record biographical or historical details and/or activity information about the entity defined in fields 200, 210 or 220.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
340		Biography and activity note	r
	a	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

340a Note text

The text of the biographical or activity note.

EXAMPLES

1.

102	⊔⊔	**a**usa **a**deu
152	⊔⊔	**a**AACR2
200	⊔1	**a**Arendt **b**Hannah **f**1906-1975
340	⊔⊔	**a**German by birth. Naturalized American in 1951

2.

120	⊔⊔	**a**c **b**a
200	⊔1	**a**Morris, **b**Jan, **f**1926-
340	⊔⊔	**a**James Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
500	⊔1	**a**Morris, **b**James, **f**1926-

3.

100	⊔1	**b**a **c**fre **g**ba
101	⊔⊔	**a**und
102	⊔⊔	**a**ita
120	⊔⊔	**a**b **b**a

152	␣␣	**a**AFNOR
200	␣1	**9**ita **a**Niccolini da Sabbio **b**Domenico **c**imprimeur-libraire **f**15..-160.?
300	0␣	**a**Apublié également sous la raison: "Ad signum Seminantis" ("al segno del Seminante") entre 1572 et 1575
300	0␣	**a**En 1559-1560 travaille en association avec son frère Cornelio Niccolini da Sabbio
340	␣␣	**a**Venezia, 1557-1605? In contrada San Giulian. Al segno del Seminante
340	␣␣	**a**Dominus illuminatio mea et salus mea, quem timebo? Prudentia negotium non Fortuna ducat. Nisi qui legitime certaverit

4.　*

200	␣1	**a**Andolšek-Jeras **b**Lidija **r**00459
340	␣␣	**a**Redna članica Slovenske akademije znanosti in umetnosti od leta 1993, tajnica razreda za medicinske vede od leta 1992, članica Evropske akademije znanosti in umetnosti od 1994

5.　*

200	␣1	**a**Davis **b**Margaret **r**06919
340	␣␣	**a**Angležinja, ki živi v Sloveniji

6.　*

200	␣1	**a**Opeka **b**Pedro
340	␣␣	**a**Rojen v Buenos Airesu, od leta 1976 misijonar na Madagaskarju
400	␣1	**a**Opeka **b**Peter

7.　*

200	␣1	**a**Torkar **b**Igor
340	␣␣	**a**Kemik po izobrazbi, pesnik, dramatik, pisatelj, publicist.
400	␣1	**5**f **a**Fakin **b**Boris
400	␣1	**5**z **a**Torkar **b**I.

8.　*

210	02	**9**lat **a**Academia operosorum **c**Ljubljana
340	␣␣	**a**Združba izobražencev, ustanovljena 1693 v Ljubljani po zgledu rimske Arcadie; delovala do ok. 1725. Obnovljena 1781 z enakim imenom; 1785 končala delo. *(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)*

356 GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE

This field is used in an authority or a reference record to record geographical details about the entity recorded in field 215.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
356		Geographical note	r
	a	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

356a Note text

The text of the note in the language of cataloguing.

EXAMPLES

1. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Amazonka (vodotok)
356	␣␣	**a**Od brazilske meje do izliva Ria Negra vzhodno od Manausa se imenuje Solimoes.

2. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Tadž Mahal (Agra, Indija)
356	␣␣	**a**Mavzolej pri Agri v severni Indiji; ok. 1632-1648 ga je postavil veliki mogul Šah Džahan.

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Grenlandija
356	␣␣	**a**Dansko ozemlje na istoimenskem, največjem otoku na svetu med Atlantskim oceanom na jugu in Severnim ledenim morjem na severu.

4XX VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK

FIELD LIST

400 Variant access point – personal name
410 Variant access point – corporate body name
415 Variant access point – territorial or geographical name
420 Variant access point – family name
430 Variant access point – title
440 Variant access point – name/title
443 Variant access point – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts
450 Variant access point – topical subject
480 Variant access point – form, genre or physical characteristics

This block contains variant access points. From each 4XX field a see reference entry may be generated that should redirect users from the variant access point to the authorized access point in 2XX field.

The indicators and the majority of subfields of the 4XX fields are the same as those in the 2XX fields, therefore the specifications are not repeated in the 4XX fields.

In 4XX fields the following control subfields may be used:

2	*System code*
3	*Record number*
5	*Relationship control*
7	*Script of the base access point*
8	*Language of cataloguing*
9	*Language of the base access point*

The use of control subfields is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter (before the 2XX block).

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

This field contains the variant access point for a form of personal name referred from

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
400		Variant access point – personal name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Part of name (not entry element)*	nr
	c	*Additions other than dates*	r
	d	*Roman numerals*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	g	*Expansion of initials of forename*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name entered under forename or direct order*
	1	*name entered under surname*

The indicator signifies whether the name is entered in direct order (only a forename or a forename and a surname) or under a surname (a surname and a forname).

SUBFIELDS

Subfields froma to f are described at field 200, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 7, 8and 9 in the Control Subfields chapter.

400g Expansion of initials of forename

Complete forenames when subfield b contains initials as the preferred form and when both forms, the initials and the complete form, are required.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 400 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in field 2XX, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

In records for authority control for authors, the subfield 9 in field 400 is used to define the display of see references for particular bibliographic records. Entering this field prevents the display of certain see references. For certain authors from the 70X fields in the bibliographic record, only the see references for those variant access points will be displayed, for which the field 400 in a corresponding authority record either does not contain subfield 9 or it contains the same language code as the bibliographic record in subfield *101a – Language used by the entity* (see example 5). This way you can avoid displaying the see references for those forms of the name, which are a result of translating the author's works into different languages.

RELATED FIELDS

200   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Du Maurier, **c**Dame **b**Daphne
400	␣1	**a**Maurier, **c**Dame **b**Daphne du

2.

200	␣1	**a**Waterman, **b**Anthony M.C., **f**1931-
400	␣1	**a**Waterman, **b**A.M.C.

3.

200	␣1	**a**Rolfe, **b**Fr.
400	␣0	**a**Corvo, **c**Baron
400	␣1	**a**Rolfe, **b**Frederick William

4.   *

200	␣1	**a**Bor **b**Matej
400	␣1	**5**f **a**Pavšič **b**Vladimir

Authority record display:

```
The ISBD entry appears as:

Bor, Matej
<Pavšič, Vladimir (real name)
```

5. *

200	␣1	**a**Shakespeare **b**William
400	␣1	**9**scr **a**Šekspir **b**Viljem
		*(A see reference for "Šekspir, Viljem" will be displayed only for bibliographic records which contain the code "scr" – * Croatian == see HRV in subfield 101a.)*

6. *

200	␣1	**a**Pavlin **b**Stanka
400	␣1	**5**k **a**Jančar **b**Stanka

7. *

200	␣1	**a**Arnež **b**Zoran M. **r**04917
400	␣1	**a**Arnež **b**Zoran
400	␣1	**a**Arnež **b**Zoran Marij
400	␣1	**a**Arnež **b**Z.

8. *

200	␣1	**a**Ružič **b**Ernest
400	␣0	**5**z **a**E. R.
400	␣0	**5**z **a**ER

9. *

200	␣0	**a**Janez Svetokriški
400	␣1	**5**f **a**Lionelli **b**Tobija
400	␣0	**a**Ioannes Baptista a Santa Cruce
400	␣0	**a**Joannes Baptista a Sancta Cruce

10. *

200	␣1	**a**Lahovnik **b**Matej **r**18935
400	␣1	**5**z **a**Lahkovnik **b**Matej
810	␣␣	**a**Rešeni primeri, naloge in pojasnila za predmet Ekonomika podjetja 2 : vaje / Matej Lahkovnik[!]. - 2001 **b**Matej Lahkovnik
830	␣␣	**a**Oblika imena Lahkovnik, Matej je posledica tipkarske napake. *(If the author's name is wrongly written on the publication, the see reference is also made for that form of the name.)*

11. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Прокофьев **b**Сергей Сергеевич **f**1891-1953
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Prokof'ev**b**Sergej Sergeevic**f**1891-1953
400	␣0	**7**ca **a**Прокофиев **f**1891-1953
400	␣1	**7**ba **a**Prokofiev **b**Sergej **f**1891-1953
400	␣1	**7**ca **a**Прокофиев **b**Сергей **f**1891-1953

12. * COBISS.net

200	␣0	**7**cb **a**Гргур **d**I **c**папа **f**око **5**40-604
200	␣0	**7**ba **a**Gregorius **d**I **c**papa **f**oko **5**40-604
400	␣0	**7**cb **a**Григорије Двојеслов **f**око 540-604 **c**свети
400	␣0	**7**ba **a**Grgur Veliki **f**oko 540-604

13. *

200	␣0	**a**Marija **c**Sveta Devica
400	␣0	**a**Blažena Devica Marija
400	␣0	**a**Bogorodica
400	␣0	**a**Brezmadežna
400	␣0	**a**Devica Marija
400	␣0	**a**Madona
400	␣0	**a**Mati Božja
400	␣0	**a**Naša Gospa
400	␣0	**2**ram **3**<nnn> **5**n **8**fre **a**Marie **c**Sainte Vierge
400	␣0	**2**sears **3**<nnn> **5**n **8**eng **a**Mary **c**Blessed Virgin, Saint
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

14. *

200	␣0	**a**Zevs **c**grško božanstvo
400	␣1	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11950542 **5**n **8**fre **a**Zeus (divinité grecque)
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85149769 **5**n **8**eng **a**Zeus (Greek deity)
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**sh 85149769 **5**n **8**eng **a**Zeus (Greek deity)
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). Authorized access points for the same person, formulated in accordance with the rules from other subject systems, are also entered in fields in the 4XX block. The RAMEAU system treats names of deities as personal names, which is why the access point is entered in field 400. LCSH and Sears treat names of deities as topical subjects, which is why the access points are entered in field 450.)

15. *

106	␣␣	**a**2
200	␣0	**a**Egerija **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**lat **a**Aetheria **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**lat **a**Egeria **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**fre **a**Égérie **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**lat **a**Eterija **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**lat **a**Etheria **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
400	␣0	**9**fre **a**Éthérie **f**3..-3..? **c**avtorica potopisnega dnevnika
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

16. *

106	␣␣	**a**2
200	␣1	**a**Kolumb **b**Krištof **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**fre **a**Colomb **b**Christophe **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**ita **a**Colombo **b**Cristoforo **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**por **a**Colomb **b**Cristóvão **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**spa **a**Colón **b**Cristóbal **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**spa **a**Colón y Fontanarrosa **b**Cristóbal **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**spa **a**Fontanarrosa **b**Cristóbal Colón y **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**eng **a**Columbus **b**Christopher **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**lat **a**Columbus **b**Christophorus **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**rus **a**Kolumb **b**Hristofor **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**pol **a**Kolumb **b**Krzysztof **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**srp **a**Kolumbo **b**Kristofor **f**1451-1506
400	␣1	**9**ger **a**Kolumbus **b**Christoph **f**1451-1506
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

17. *

106	␣␣	**a**2
200	␣0	**a**Smrkci **c**izmišljeni liki
400	␣0	**9**eng **a**Smurfs **c**izmišljeni liki
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

This field contains the variant access point for a form of corporate body name referred from.

Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 410). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 415).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
410		Variant access point – corporate body name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Subdivision*	r
	c	*Addition to name or qualifier*	r
	d	*Number of meeting*	nr
	e	*Location of meeting*	r
	f	*Date of meeting*	nr
	g	*Inverted element*	nr
	h	*Part of name (not entry or inverted element)*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***The kind of corporate body***
	0	*corporate name*
	1	*meeting*
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name in inverted form*
	1	*name entered under place or jurisdiction*
	2	*name entered under name in direct order*

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to h are described at field 210, subfields j, x and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 7, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 410 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

210   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

210	02	**a**Delaware Racing Commission
410	01	**a**Delaware. **b**Racing Commission

2.

210	02	**a**SchweizerischesRotes Kreuz
410	02	**a**Croix-Rouge suisse

3.

210	12	**a**Symposium on Endocrines and Nutrition **f**(1956 ; **e**University of Michigan)
410	12	**a**Nutrition Symposium **f**(1956 ; **e**University of Michigan)

4.

210	02	**a**D.B. Lister & Associates
410	00	**a**Lister **g**D.B. & Associates

5.   *

210	02	**a**Institut informacijskih znanosti **c**Maribor
410	02	**5**d **a**IZUM
410	02	**a**Institute of Information Science **c**Maribor
		(Authority record display:)

```
The ISBD entry appears as:

Institut informacijskih znanosti (Maribor)

< IZUM (akronim)
```

6.   *

210	12	**a**Slovensko združenje za projektni management **b**Projektni forum **f**2001 **e**Maribor
410	12	**a**ZPM **b**Projektni forum **f**2001 **e**Maribor

7.   *

210	02	**a**Goriški muzej **c**Nova Gorica
410	02	**a**Museum von Gorica **c**Nova Gorica
410	02	**a**Gorica Museum **c**Nova Gorica

8.   *

210	02	**a**Skupnost neodvisnih držav
410	02	**9**fre **a**CEI
410	02	**9**eng **a**CIS
410	01	**9**eng **a**Commonwealth of Independent States
410	02	**9**fre **a**Communauté des Etats indépendants
410	02	**a**SND
410	02	**9**rus **a**SNG
410	02	**9**rus **a**Sodružestvo nezavisimyh gosudarstv
410	02	**2**ram **3**FRBNF12333917 **5**n **8**fre **a**Communauté des Etats indépendants
410	01	**2**sears **3**SSEA94000034 **5**n **8**eng **a**Commonwealth of Independent States
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). Field 410 contains names for Skupnost neodvisnih držav *in foreign languages and its abbreviations. Authorized access points for* Skupnost neodvisnih držav*, formulated according to the rules from other subject systems, are also entered in field 410.)*

9.   *

210	02	**a**Kolosej **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**lat **a**Amphitheatrum Flavium **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**ita **a**Anfiteatro Flavio **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**fre **a**Colisée **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**eng **a**Coliseum **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**ita **a**Colosseo **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**9**eng **a**Colosseum **c**Rim, Italija
410	02	**a**Flavijev amfiteater **c**Rim, Italija
410	01	**2**lc **3**sh 87004621 **5**n **8**eng **a**Colosseum (Rome, Italy)
415	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF1194862 **5**n **8**fre **a**Rome (Italie) **x**Colosseo
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). The LCSH *system treats the Roman Colosseum as a corporate body, which is why it is entered in field 410. The* RAMEAU *system treats it as a geographical name, which is why it is entered in field 415.)*

415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

This field contains the variant access point for a form of a territorial or geographical name referred from.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 415). Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 410). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
415		Variant access point – territorial or geographical name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 215, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 415 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

215 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

215	␣␣	**a**Australia
415	␣␣	**a**Commonwealth of Australia
415	␣␣	**a**New Holland

2.

215	␣␣	**a**McAlester (Okla.)
415	␣␣	**a**McAlester, Okla.

3. *

215	␣␣	**a**Kvarnerski otoki (Hrvaška)
415	␣␣	**a**Arhipelag Kvarner (Hrvaška)
415	␣␣	**a**Kvarnerski arhipelag (Hrvaška)
415	␣␣	**9**hrv **a**Kvarnerski otoci (Hrvaška)
415	␣␣	**a**Kvarnersko otočje (Hrvaška)
415	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 94002319 **5**n **8**eng **a**Kvarner Islands (Croatia)

(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

4. *

215	␣␣	**a**Trdnjava Kluže (Slovenija)
356	1␣	**a**Trdnjava Kluže, zgrajena leta 1882, je spadala v sistem šestih utrdb pod imenom Koroške utrdbe, ki so zapirale pot v dolino Ziljice od koder vodi pot iz Trbiža v Beljak in nato v središče Avstrije.
415	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Fort Flitscher Klause (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Strassensperre Flitscher Klause (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**a**Trdnjava Bovške Kluže (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**a**Utrdba Bovške Klavže (Slovenija)

(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Radovljica (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**a**Predtrg (Radovljica, Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Radmansdorf (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**a**Radmarjeva vas (Slovenija)
415	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Radmarsdorf (Slovenija)

6. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**y **c**c **g**3
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Evropa **z**20. stoletje
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Evropa **a**+ **b**Zgodovina **a**+ **b**1900-1999
415	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85045713 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**1871-1918

415	⊔⊔	**2**lc **3**sh 85045714 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**20th century
415	⊔⊔	**2**lc **3**sh 85045717 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**1918-1945
415	⊔⊔	**2**lc **3**sh 85045718 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**1945-
415	⊔⊔	**2**lc **3**sh 93008826 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**1989-
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11941837 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1871-1918
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11974411 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**20e siecle
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11938816 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1918-1945
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11974412 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1945-1970
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11940693 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1945-
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF15528999 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1939-1945 (Occupation allemande)
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11974413 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1970-1989
415	⊔⊔	**2**ram **3**FRBNF12511380 **5**n **8**fre **a**Europe **z**1989-....
415	⊔⊔	**2**sears **3**SSEA82003456 **5**n **8**eng **a**Europe **x**History **z**20th century

(A reference record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). Repeatable 415 fields contain the corresponding authorized access points from other subject systems. In such cases, fields with subdivisions are used. Otherwise, no subdivisions are used for variant access points in the SGC.)

420 Variant access point – family name

This field contains the variant access point for a form of family name referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
420		Variant access point – family name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	c	*Type of family*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a, c and f are described at field 220, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 420 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

220 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

220	␣␣	**a**Medici **c**House of
420	␣␣	**a**House of Medici

2.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
220	␣␣	**a**Herbersteini **c**plemiška rodbina
420	␣␣	**a**Grafen von Herberstein
420	␣␣	**a**Grofje Herbersteini
420	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Herberstein **c**plemiška rodbina

3.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
220	␣␣	**9**slv **a**Spanheimski **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**ger **a**Spanheim **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**slv **a**Spanheimi **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**slv **a**Španhajm **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**slv **a**Španhajmi **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**9**slv **a**Španhajmski **c**vladarska rodbina
420	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 96003650 **5**n **8**eng **9**ger **a**Spanheim family
420	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF12217835 **5**n **8**fre **a**Sponheim **c**famille de
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). Authorized access points for the same family, formulated in accordance with the rules from other subject systems, are also entered in fields in the 4XX block.)

430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE

This field contains the variant access point for a form of title referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
430		Variant access point – title	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	h	*Number of section or part*	r
	i	*Name of section or part*	r
	k	*Date of publication*	nr
	l	*Form subheading*	nr
	m	*Language*	nr
	n	*Miscellaneous information*	r
	q	*Version (or date of version)*	nr
	r	*Medium of performance (for music)*	r
	s	*Numeric designation (for music)*	r
	u	*Key (for music)*	nr
	w	*Arranged statement (for music)*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to w are described at field 230, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 430 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

230   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

230	␣␣	**a**Nibelungenlied
430	␣␣	**a**Lied der Nibelungen

2.

230	␣␣	**a**Bible **x**Music
430	␣␣	**a**Bible **i**O.T. **i**Psalms **x**Music

3.

230	␣␣	**a**Symhonies **z**Orgue **s**No. 9 **s**Op. 70 **u**Do Mineur
430	␣␣	**a**Symphonie gothique **s**Op.

4. *

230	␣␣	**a**Sveto pismo
430	␣␣	**a**Biblia
430	␣␣	**a**Biblija
430	␣␣	**a**Knjiga knjig
430	␣␣	**a**Sveta Biblija
430	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA83000855 **5**n **8**eng **a**Bible

5. *

230	␣␣	**a**Kumranski rokopisi
430	␣␣	**a**Kumranski zvitki
430	␣␣	**a**Mrtvomorski rokopisi
430	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA85000016 **5**n **8**eng **a**Dead Sea scrolls
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11934494 **5**n **8**fre **a**Manuscrits de la Mer Morte
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). The RAMEAU *system treats the term* Manuscrits de la Mer Morte *as a topical subject, which is why it is entered in field 450.)*

440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

This field contains the variant access point for a form of name/title referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
440		Variant access point – name/title	r
	a	*Name*	nr
	t	*Title*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 240, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 440 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

240   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

240	⊔⊔	**a**Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616 **t**Hamlet
440	⊔⊔	**a**Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616 **t**Tragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark

2. *

240	⊔⊔	**9**lat **a**Herberstein, Žiga, 1486-1566 **t**Rerum Moscoviticarum commentarii
440	⊔⊔	**9**lat **a**Herberstein, Žiga, 1486-1566 **t**Moscovia
		(Record for the work Rerum Moscoviticarum commentarii *by Žiga Herberstein.)*

443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

This field contains the variant access point for a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
443		Variant access point – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	t	*Conventional title*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	1	*Name entered under country or other geographical name*
	2	*Name entered under other form*

Value "1" of the second indicator is used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value "2" of the second indicator is used for church names.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 243, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 443 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

243   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

EXAMPLES

1.

243	⊔1	**a**Združene države Amerike **t**Ustava. 1st-10th Amendments
440	⊔1	**8**slv **a**France **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Deklaracija o državljanskih pravicah (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**slv **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Deklaracija o pravicah (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**slv **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Listina pravic (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**slv **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Listina svoboščin (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**eng **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Bill of Rights (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**eng **a**Združene države Amerike **t**United States Bill of Rights (1791)
440	⊔1	**8**slv **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Zakon o pravicah (1791)
443	⊔1	**8**slv **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Ustava. 1.-10. amandma
443	⊔1	**8**eng **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Ustava. Bill of Rights

450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

This field contains the variant access point for a subject in the form of a topical subject referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
450		Variant access point – topical subject	r
	a	*Topical subject*	nr
	j	*Form subdivision*	r
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 250, subfields j, x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 450 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

250   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

EXAMPLES

1.

250	␣␣	**a**Federal aid to education
450	␣␣	**a**Education **x**Federal aid

2. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Antropologija
450	␣␣	**a**Antropološki vidik
450	␣␣	**a**Človekoslovje
450	␣␣	**a**Človekoznanstvo
450	␣␣	**a**Etnografski vidik
450	␣␣	**a**Etnološki vidik
450	␣␣	**a**Kulturna antropologija
450	␣␣	**a**Socialna antropologija
450	␣␣	**a**Socioantropologija
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85005581 **5**n **8**eng **a**Anthropology
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF13318481 **5**n **8**fre **a**Anthropologie
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA82000432 **5**n **8**eng **a**Anthropology
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC). Authorized access points formulated in accordance with the rules from other subject systems are also entered in fields in the 4XX block.)

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Slovanske države
415	␣␣	**a**Slovanske dežele
415	␣␣	**a**Slovansko govoreče dežele
415	␣␣	**a**Slovansko govoreče države
450	␣␣	**a**Slovansko govorno območje
450	␣␣	**a**Slovansko jezikovno območje
415	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85123354 **5**n **8**eng **a**Slavic countries
415	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11953326 **5**n **8**fre **a**Pays slaves

480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This field contains the variant access point for a form, genre or physical characteristics referred from.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
480		Variant access point – form, genre or physical characteristics	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 280, subfields x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 5, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point in field 480 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2XX field, formulated in accordance with the subject system.

RELATED FIELDS

280 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

EXAMPLES

1.

152	␣␣	**b**rbpap
280	␣␣	**a**Marbled papers
480	␣␣	**a**Marble papers
		(The term Marbled papers *is used in preference to* Marble papers *by the* Paper Terms: a Thesaurus for Use in Rare Book and Special Collections Cataloguing*.)*

2.

152	␣␣	**b**gsafd
280	␣␣	**a**Erotic stories
480	␣␣	**a**Adult fiction
		(The Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc. *prefer* Erotic stories *to* Adult Fiction*.)*

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Filmoteke
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85088046 **5**n **8**eng **a**Motion picture film collections
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11945398 **5**n **8**fre **a**Cinématheques
480	␣␣	**a**Filmske zbirke
480	␣␣	**a**Zbirke filmskega gradiva
480	␣␣	**a**Zbirke filmov

4. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Gorniški filmi
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 2005008146 **5**n **8**eng **a**Mountain films
480	␣␣	**a**Alpinistični filmi
480	␣␣	**a**Planinski filmi

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Blues
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85015115 **5**n **8**eng **a**Blues (Music)
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11975253 **5**n **8**fre **a**Blues
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA82001316 **5**n **8**eng **a**Blues music
480	␣␣	**a**Bluesovske pesmi
480	␣␣	**a**Blues glasba
480	␣␣	**a**Bluz

6. *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**y **c**l
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Književnost **z**20. stoletje
310	1␣	**a**Rabi kombinacijo **b**Književnost **a**+ **b**1900-1999
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11939464 **5**n **8**fre **a**Littérature **z**20e siècle
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85077559 **5**n **8**eng **a**Literature, Modern **z**20th century
480	␣␣	**a**Sodobna književnost **z**20. stoletje
480	␣␣	**a**Moderna književnost **z**20. stoletje
480	␣␣	**a**Književnost 20. stoletja

(Reference record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

5XX RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

FIELD LIST

500   Related access point – personal name
510   Related access point – corporate body name
515   Related access point – territorial or geographical name
520   Related access point – family name
530   Related access point – title
540   Related access point – name/title
543   Related access point – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts
550   Related access point – topical subject
580   Related access point – form, genre or physical characteristics

This block contains the related access points that form the structure of the "see also" references for the access point in field 2XX.

The indicators and the majority of subfields of the 5XX fields are the same as those in the 2XX fields, therefore the specifications of identical subfields are not repeated in the 5XX fields.

In 5XX fields the following control subfields may be used:

3	*Record number*
5	*Relationship control*
7	*Script of the base access point*
9	*Language of the base access point*

The use of control subfields is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter (before the 2XX block).

500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of personal name that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
500		Related access point – personal name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Part of name (not entry element)*	nr
	c	*Additions other than dates*	r
	d	*Roman numerals*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name entered under forename or direct order*
	1	*name entered under surname*

The indicator signifies whether the name is entered in direct order (only a forename or a forename and a surname) or under a surname (a surname and a forename).

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to f are described at field 200, and subfields 3, 5, 7 and 9 in the *Control subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a personal name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

200   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Edwards, **b**P.
500	␣1	**a**Edwards, **b**Paul

2.

200	␣0	**a**Pseudo-Brutus
500	␣1	**a**Brutus, **b**Marcus Junius, **f**85?-42 B.C.

3.

200	␣1	**a**Rossi **b**Jean-Baptiste
500	␣1	**5**e **a**Japrisot **b**Sébastien

4.

200	␣1	**a**Morris, **b**John
300	0␣	**a**Joint pseudonym of Morris Cargill and John Hearne
500	␣1	**5**f **a**Cargill, **b**Morris
500	␣1	**5**f **a**Hearne, **b**John, **f**1925-

5.

200	␣0	**a**Kumbel
500	␣1	**5**f **a**Hein, **b**Piet

6.   *

200	␣0	**a**Trio TriRitke
300	0␣	**a**Trio TriRitke je skupno ime za Vido Mokrin-Pauer, Milana Šelja in Barico Smole
500	␣1	**a**Smole **b**Barica
500	␣1	**a**Šelj **b**Milan
500	␣1	**a**Mokrin-Pauer **b**Vida

   *

200	␣1	**a**Smole **b**Barica
500	␣0	**3**5523043 **a**Trio TriRitke

   *

200	␣1	**a**Šelj **b**Milan
500	␣0	**3**5522531 **a**Trio TriRitke

   *

200	␣1	**a**Mokrin-Pauer **b**Vida
500	␣0	**3**759651 **a**Trio TriRitke

7.   * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**a**Мирковић **b**Мијо **7**cb
200	␣1	**a**Mirković **b**Mijo **7**ba

300	0␣	**a**Literarna dela piše pod pseudonimom
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**e **7**cb **a**Балота **b**Мате
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**e **7**ba **a**Balota **b**Mate

*

200	␣1	**a**Балота **b**Мате **7**cb
200	␣1	**a**Balota **b**Mate **7**ba
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**f **7**cb **a**Мирковић **b**Мијо
500	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**f **7**ba **a**Mirković **b**Mijo

8. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Krščanstvo
500	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Jezus Kristus
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Religije
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Cerkev
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Cerkvena zgodovina
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Kristjani
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Krščanski vidik
550	0␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Teologija
		(Apart from the broader term Religije, *the record for* Krščanstvo *also contains six related terms, one of which,* Jezus Kristus, *is a personal name.)*

9. *

200	␣0	**a**Marija Luiza **c**francoska cesarica **f**1791-1847
500	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxe **a**Napoleon **d**I **c**francoski cesar **f**1769-1821
500	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxg **a**Franc **d**II **c**avstrijski cesar **f**1768-1835
		(Record for Marie Louise, who was married to the French Emperor Napoleon I. Her father was the Austrian Emperor Francis II. The relationships between persons are indicated by the codes in subfields 5 in fields 500.)

510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of corporate body name that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 510). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 515).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
510		Related access point – corporate body name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Subdivision*	r
	c	*Addition to name or qualifier*	r
	d	*Number of meeting*	nr
	e	*Location of meeting*	r
	f	*Date of meeting*	nr
	g	*Inverted element*	nr
	h	*Part of name (not entry or inverted element)*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***The kind of corporate body***
	0	*corporate name*
	1	*meeting*
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name in inverted form*
	1	*name entered under place or jurisdiction*
	2	*name entered under name in direct order*

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to h are described at field 210, and subfields 3, 5, 7 and 9 in the *Control subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

210   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

210	01	**a**Great Britain. **b**Board of Trade
510	01	**5**b **a**Great Britain. **b**Department of Trade and Industry
510	01	**5**b **a**Great Britain. **b**Department of Trade

2.

| 210 | 02 | **a**American Material Handling Society |
| 510 | 02 | **5**b **a**International Material Management Society |

3.

| 210 | 12 | **a**Meeting in the Matterof Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries |
| 510 | 12 | **5**a **a**Conference in the Matterof Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries |

4.

| 210 | 02 | **a**Dunedin Savings Bank |
| 510 | 02 | **5**a **a**Otago Savings Bank |

5.   *

| 210 | 02 | **a**Institut informacijskih znanosti **c**Maribor |
| 510 | 02 | **3**6209123 **5**a **a**Univerza v Mariboru **b**Institut informacijskih znanosti **c**1990-1992 |

   *

| 210 | 02 | **a**Univerza v Mariboru **b**Institut informacijskih znanosti **c**1990-1992 |
| 510 | 02 | **3**6208099 **5**b **a**Institut informacijskih znanosti **c**Maribor |

6.   *

| 210 | 02 | **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo |
| 510 | 02 | **3**<nnn> **5**a **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo, gradbeništvo in geodezijo |

210	02	**a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo, gradbeništvo in geodezijo
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**b **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za gradbeništvo in geodezijo
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**b **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Fakulteta za arhitekturo

7. *

210	02	**a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Pedagoška fakulteta
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**a **a**Pedagoška akademija

210	02	**a**Pedagoška akademija
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**a **a**Višja pedagoška šola
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**b **a**Univerza v Ljubljani **b**Pedagoška fakulteta

210	02	**a**Višja pedagoška šola
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**b **a**Pedagoška akademija

8. *

210	02	**a**Cerkev Jezusa Kristusa svetih iz poslednjih dni
510	02	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Reorganizirana Cerkev Jezusa Kristusa svetih iz poslednjih dni
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Mormonska cerkev
		(Record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of territorial or geographical name that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 515). Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 510). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
515		Related access point – territorial or geographical name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 215, subfields x and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a territorial or geographical name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

215 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

215	␣␣	**a**Sri Lanka
515	␣␣	**a**Ceylon

2.

215	␣␣	**a**Kabwe (Zambia)
515	␣␣	**5**a **a**Brokes Hill (Zambia)

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Jadransko morje
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Sredozemsko morje
		(Sredozemsko morje is a broader term of the term Jadransko morje.)

4. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Slovanski jeziki
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanske države
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Baltoslovanski jeziki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Indoevropski jeziki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Cirilica
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Glagolica
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Panslavizem
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slavistika
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanska imena
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanska književnost
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanski rokopisi
		(The term Slovanske države in field 515 is related to the term Slovanski jeziki.)

5. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Slovanske države
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Vzhodna Evropa
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovani
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanske študije
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanski jeziki
		(The term Vzhodna Evropa in field 515 is related to the term Slovanske države.)

520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of family name that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
520		Related access point – family name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	c	*Type of family*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a, c and f are described at field 220, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a family name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

220   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

220	␣␣	**a**Duecker family

520	␣␣	**a**Druecker family

2. *

200	␣0	**a**Marija Luiza **c**francoska cesarica **f**1791-1847
500	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxe **a**Napoleon **d**I **c**francoski cesar **f**1769-1821
500	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxeg **a**Franc **d**II **c**avstrijski cesar **f**1768-1835
520	␣0	**3**<nnn> **5**xxxl **a**Habsburžani **c**vladarska rodbina
		(Record for Marie Louise of the Habsburg family, who was married to the French Emperor Napoleon I. Her father was the Austrian Emperor Francis II.)

530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of title that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
530		Related access point – title	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	h	*Number of section or part*	r
	i	*Name of section or part*	r
	k	*Date of publication*	nr
	l	*Form subheading*	nr
	m	*Language*	nr
	n	*Miscellaneous information*	r
	q	*Version (or date of version)*	nr
	r	*Medium of performance (for music)*	r
	s	*Numeric designation (for music)*	r
	u	*Key (for music)*	nr
	w	*Arranged statement (for music)*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to w are described at field 230, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

230   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

230	␣␣	**a**Caedmon manuscripts
530	␣␣	**a**Daniel (Anglo-Saxon poem)

2.

230	␣␣	**a**Abschied **s**D 957 n° 7
530	␣␣	**5**h **a**Schwanengesang **s**D957 et 965 A

3. *

230	␣␣	**a**Deset Božjih zapovedi
530	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Sveto pismo **i**Stara zaveza
		(Related terms in a record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of name/title that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
540		Related access point – name/title	r
	a	*Name*	nr
	t	*Title*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 240, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a name/title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

240 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1.

240	␣␣	**a**Fauré, Gabriel, 1845-1924 **t**Ballades, piano, op. 19
540	␣␣	**3**85023456 **a**Fauré, Gabriel, 1845-1924 **t**Ballades, piano and orchestra, op. 19

2.　*

243	␣1	**a**Združene države Amerike **t**Ustava
300	1␣	**a**Ustava je bila sprejeta 17. 9. 1787 na konvenciji v Philadelphii, veljati pa je začela 1789. Za prvi ustavni akt Združenih držav Amerike velja Deklaracija o neodvisnosti (1776), s katero je 13 britanskih kolonij v Severni Ameriki razglasilo neodvisnost od Velike Britanije.
540	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Združene države Amerike **t**Declaration of Independence (1776)

543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of conventional name/title for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
543		Related access point – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	t	*Conventional title*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	1	*Name entered under country or other geographical name*
	2	*Name entered under other form*

Value "1" of the second indicator is used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value "2" of the second indicator is used for church names.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 243, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

243   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

EXAMPLES

1.   *

210	01	**a**Francija **b**Convention nationale
300	1␣	**a**Francoska narodna skupščina med francosko revolucijo, izvoljena 1792, razpuščena 28. 10. 1795 ; imela zakonodajno, sodno in izvršilno oblast.
543	␣1	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Francija **t**Ustava (1793)

550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of a topical subject as subject that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
550		Related access point – topical subject	r
	a	*Topical subject*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 250, subfields x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains a topical subject formulated in accordance with the subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

250   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

EXAMPLES

1.

250	␣␣	**a**Electronic data processing **x**Data preparation
550	␣␣	**a**Input design, Computers

2. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Starodavna likovna umetnost
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Starodavne civilizacije
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Zgodovina likovne umetnosti
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Arheološke ostaline
		(Record with a related term and two broader terms.)

3. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
220	␣␣	**a**Habsburžani (vladarska rodbina)
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Vladarji (Avstrija)
		(Record for a royal family with a broader term that is a topical subject.)

4. *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Slovanski jeziki
515	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanske države
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Baltoslovanski jeziki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Indoevropski jeziki
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Cirilica
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Glagolica
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Panslavizem
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slavistika
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanska imena
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanska književnost
550	␣␣	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovanski rokopisi
		(Fields 515 and 550 contain seven related terms and two broader terms for the term Slovanski jeziki*.)*

580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This field contains the authorized access point for form, genre or physical characteristics that is related to the access point in field 2XX.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
580		Related access point – form, genre or physical characteristics	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 280, subfields x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 3, 5 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field contains an access point for form, genre or physical characteristics formulated in accordance with the subject system and related to the access point in field 2XX.

RELATED FIELDS

280   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

EXAMPLES

1.

152	⊔⊔	**b**rbpap
280	⊔⊔	**a**Marbled papers
480	⊔⊔	**a**Marble papers
580	⊔⊔	**5**g **a**[Surface applications of paper]
580	⊔⊔	**5**h **a**Antique marbled papers
580	⊔⊔	**5**h **a**British marbled papers
580	⊔⊔	**5**h **a**Cocoa marbled papers
		(In the ACRL Thesaurus of Paper Terms, Marbled papers *has a broader term,* Surface applications of paper *and several narrower terms, e.g.,* Antique marbled papers, *etc.)*

2. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
280	⊔⊔	**a**Kazala
550	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Indeksiranje
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Bibliografije
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Konkordance
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Odzadnji slovarji
		(A record with a broader term and three related terms for the term Kazala. *The broader term* Indeksiranje *is a topical name that does not represent form, genre or physical characteristics.)*

3. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
280	⊔⊔	**a**Športni filmi
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Šport
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Filmi

4. *

152	⊔⊔	**b**sgc
280	⊔⊔	**a**Slovenska poezija
550	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovenski pesniki
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Južnoslovanska poezija
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Poezija v slovenščini
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**g **a**Slovenska književnost
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovenska proza
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovenska zamejska poezija
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovenske pesmi (glasba)
580	⊔⊔	**3**<nnn> **5**z **a**Slovenski madrigali (glasba)
		(A record with several broader and related terms for the term Slovenska poezija.*)*

6XX CLASSIFICATION NUMBER BLOCK

FIELD LIST

675 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)
686 Other classification numbers

This block contains fields for classification numbers that are related to the authorized access point in the 2XX field.

675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)

This field contains the UDC number associated with an authorized access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
675		Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)	r
	a	*Number*	nr
	v	*Edition*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

675a Number

The UDC number.

675v Edition

The edition of UDC schedules from which the number in subfield a is taken.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The number is taken from the version of the UDC schedules used by the agency preparing the record. UDC schedules are produced in various language versions and are revised from time to time. Each published edition of UDC is derived from the UDC Consortium's Master Reference File.

EXAMPLES

1. *

250	⊔⊔	**a**Glasbene šole
675	⊔⊔	**a**37

675 ␣␣ **a**78
(In the General List of Subject Headings (SGC), only the UDC main class numbers are used.)

686 OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS

This field contains a class numbers from classification systems which are not internationally used. The classification system is entered in subfield 2.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
686		Other classification numbers	r
	a	*Number*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

686a Number

The class number taken from the classification scheme.

6862 System code

A code for the classification scheme used in formulating the number.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

For personal names the research area of the author may also be entered in accordance with the research area code list of the Slovenian Ministry of Higher Education, Science and Technology (see example).

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Ribarič **b**Samo r08010
686	␣␣	**a**303 **2**MŠZŠ

> *(The class number from the Slovenian Ministry of Higher Education, Science and Technology scheme.)*

7XX AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

FIELD LIST

700   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – personal name
710   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – corporate body name
715   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – territorial or geographical name
720   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – family name
730   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – title
740   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – name/title
743   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts
750   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – topical subject
780   Authorized access point in other language and/or script – form, genre or physical characteristics

This block contains other language and/or script forms of the access point in the 2XX block.

The indicators and the majority of subfields of the 7XX fields are the same as those in the 2XX fields, therefore the specifications of identical subfields are not repeated in the 7XX fields.

In 7XX fields the following control subfields may be used:

2	System code
3	Record number
7	Script of the base access point
8	Language of cataloguing
9	Language of the base access point

The use of control subfields is described in the *Control Subfields* chapter (before the 2XX block).

700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME

This field contains a personal name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 200 field access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
700		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – personal name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Part of name (not entry element)*	nr
	c	*Additions other than dates*	r
	d	*Roman numerals*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name entered under forename or direct order*
	1	*name entered under surname*

SUBFIELDS

The indicator signifies whether the name is entered in direct order (only a forename or a forename and a surname) or under a surname (a surname and a forname).

Subfields from a to f are described at field 200, and subfields 2, 3, 7, 8 and 9 in the chapter Control Subfields.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a personal name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 200.

This field is used in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in different languages, where the field is repeatable. In the COBISS.SI system, it is only used in the General List of Subject Headings (SGC) authority database.

RELATED FIELDS

200   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1. * COBISS.net

200	␣1	**7**ca **9**bul **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
700	␣1	**3**1700709 **7**ca **a**Соловьев **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
700	␣1	**3**1700709 **7**ba **a**Solov'ev **b**Vladimir Sergeevic **f**1853-1900

(In COBISS.BG system three authorized access points are used when a personal name form differs from the personal name form entered in Cyrillic script. The original personal name form is entered in Russian and the alternative Latin form is entered in fields 700. The ID of the authority record, which contains the original form in Russian and the alternative form in Latin script of the authority access points, is entered in subfield 3.)

*

200	␣1	**7**ca **a**Соловьев **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900
200	␣1	**7**ba **a**Solov'ev **b**Vladimir Sergeevic **f**1853-1900
700	␣1	**3**1700453 **7**ca **9**bul **a**Соловьов **b**Владимир Сергеевич **f**1853-1900

(The personal name form in Bulgarian is entered in field 700. The code for Bulgarian language is entered in subfield 9.)

2. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
200	␣0	**a**Ostržek **c**izmišljena oseba
700	␣0	**2**sgce **8**eng **9**ita **a**Pinocchio **c**Fictitious character

(Field 700 contains the form of the name that is used in English and corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 200.)

3. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
200	␣0	**a**Marija **c**Blažena Devica **c**svetnica
700	␣0	**8**eng **a**Mary **c**Blessed Virgin **c**Saint

(Field 700 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 200.)

710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

This field contains a corporate body name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 210.

Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 710). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 715).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
710		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – corporate body name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Subdivision*	r
	c	*Addition to name or qualifier*	r
	d	*Number of meeting*	nr
	e	*Location of meeting*	r
	f	*Date of meeting*	nr
	g	*Inverted element*	nr
	h	*Part of name (not entry or inverted element)*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	7	*Script of the base access point*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***The kind of corporate body***
	0	*corporate name*
	1	*meeting*
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name in inverted form*
	1	*name entered under place or jurisdiction*
	2	*name entered under name in direct order*

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to h are described at field 210, subfields x and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 3, 7, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 210.

This field is used in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in different languages, where the field is repeatable. In the COBISS.SI system, it is only used in the General List of Subject Headings (SGC) authority database.

RELATED FIELDS

210   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

001	␣␣	**a**80-123456
210	02	**a**National Library of Canada
710	02	**3**80-239876 **8**fre **9**fre **a**Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
		(Record in an English language catalogue.)

001	␣␣	**a**80-239876
210	02	**a**Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
710	02	**3**80-123456 **8**eng **9**eng **a**National Library of Canada
		(Record in a French language catalogue.)

2.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
210	02	**9**eng **a**Challenger **c**vesoljsko plovilo
710	02	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Challenger **c**Spacecraft
		(Field 710 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 210.)

3.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
210	02	**a**Skupnost neodvisnih držav

| 710 | 02 | **2**sgce **8**eng **a**Commonwealth of Independent States |
| | | *(Field 710 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 210.)* |

4. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
210	02	**a**Kolosej **c**Rim, Italija
710	02	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Colosseum **c**Rome, Italy
		(Field 710 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 210.)

715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

This field contains a territorial or geographical name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 215.

Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions, which are used as subject access points, are considered territorial names (field 715). Territorial names alone, which are used as author access points, are considered corporate body names (field 710). Territorial names, which are followed by a corporate body subdivision and which are used as author access points or as subject access points, are also considered corporate body names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
715		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – territorial or geographical name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 215, subfields x and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a territorial or geographical name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 215.

RELATED FIELDS

215   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME*

EXAMPLES

1.

001	␣␣	**a**A123456
215	␣␣	**a**Schweiz
715	␣␣	**8**fre **a**Suisse
715	␣␣	**8**ita **a**Svizzera
		(Record in a German language catalogue.)

001	␣␣	**a**A234567
215	␣␣	**a**Suisse
715	␣␣	**8**ger **a**Schweiz
715	␣␣	**8**ita **a**Svizzera
		(Record in a French language catalogue.)

001	␣␣	**a**A345678
215	␣␣	**a**Svizzera
715	␣␣	**8**ger **a**Schweiz
715	␣␣	**8**fre **a**Suisse
		(Record in an Italian language catalogue.)

2.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Sava (vodotok)
715	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Sava River
		(Field 715 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 215.)

3.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Koroška (Avstrija)
715	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Carinthia (Austria)
		(Field 715 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 215.)

4.   *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Akropola (Atene, Grčija)
715	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Acropolis (Athens, Greece)

> *(Field 715 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 215.)*

5. *

100	␣␣	**b**a **c**slv **g**ba
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
215	␣␣	**a**Tsavo (Kenija ; narodni park)
715	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Tsavo National Park (Kenya)
		(Field 715 contains the English form of the name that corresponds to the Slovenian form of the name in field 215.)

720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME

This field contains a family name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 220.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
720		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – family name	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	c	*Type of family*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a, c and f are described at field 220, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a family name formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 220.

RELATED FIELDS

220   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME*

EXAMPLES

1. *

220	␣␣	**a**Habsburžani **c**vladarska rodbina
720	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Habsburg **c**House of
		(Field 720 contains the English form of the name from field 220.)

2. *

220	␣␣	**a**Bach **c**rodbina
720	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Bach family
		(Field 720 contains the English form of the name from field 220.)

730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE

This field contains a title authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 230.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
730		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – title	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	h	*Number of section or part*	r
	i	*Name of section or part*	r
	k	*Date of publication*	nr
	l	*Form subheading*	nr
	m	*Language*	nr
	n	*Miscellaneous information*	nr
	q	*Version (or date of version)*	nr
	r	*Medium of performance (for music)*	r
	s	*Numeric designation (for music)*	r
	u	*Key (for music)*	nr
	w	*Arranged statement (for music)*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to w are described at field 230, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 230.

RELATED FIELDS

230   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE*

EXAMPLES

1. *

230	␣␣	**a**Kumranski rokopisi
730	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Dead Sea scrolls
		(Field 730 contains the English form of the name from field 230.)

2. *

230	␣␣	**a**Kamen iz Rosette
730	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Rosetta stone
		(Field 730 contains the English form of the name from field 230.)

740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE

This field contains a name/title authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 240.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
740		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – name/title	r
	a	*Name*	nr
	t	*Title*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 240, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a name/title formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 240.

RELATED FIELDS

240   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE*

743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

This field contains a conventional name/title authorized access point for legal and religious texts that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 243.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
743		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – conventional name/title for legal and religious texts	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	t	*Conventional title*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		*Not defined*
2		*Form of name indicator*
	1	*Name entered under country or other geographical name*
	2	*Name entered under other form*

Value "1" of the second indicator is used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Value "2" of the second indicator is used for church names.

SUBFIELDS

Subfields a and t are described at field 243, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts formulated in accordance with the national descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system and linked to the form in field 243.

RELATED FIELDS

243 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS*

750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

This field contains a topical subject authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 250.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
750		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – topical subject	r
	a	*Topical subject*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 250, subfields x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a topical subject formulated in accordance with the subject system and linked to the form in field 250.

RELATED FIELDS

250 *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT*

EXAMPLES

1. *

250	␣␣	**a**Antropologija
750	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Anthropology

780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

This field contains a form, genre or physical characteristics authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the access point in field 280.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
780		Authorized access point in other language and/or script – form, genre or physical characteristics	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	x	*Topical subdivision*	r
	y	*Geographical subdivision*	r
	z	*Chronological subdivision*	r
	2	*System code*	nr
	8	*Language of cataloguing*	nr
	9	*Language of the base access point*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

Subfield a is described at field 280, subfields x, y and z in the *Subdivisions* chapter, and subfields 2, 8 and 9 in the *Control Subfields* chapter.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field contains a form, genre or physical characteristics access point formulated in accordance with the subject system and linked to the form in field 280.

RELATED FIELDS

280   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS*

EXAMPLES

1.

152	␣␣	**b**rbpap
280	␣␣	**a**Marbled papers
480	␣␣	**a**Marble papers
580	␣␣	**5**g **a**[Surface applications of paper]
580	␣␣	**5**h **a**Antique marbled papers
580	␣␣	**5**h **a**British marbled papers
580	␣␣	**5**h **a**Cocoa marbled papers
780	␣␣	**8**fre **9**fre **a**Papiers marbrés
		(In the ACRL Thesaurus of Paper Terms, Marbled papers *is the preferred form. In a bilingual catalogue, the term is translated into French.)*

2.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Reliefni zemljevidi
780	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Relief maps

3.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Kitarska glasba
780	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Guitar music
		(The English form of the term in field 780 corresponds to the Slovenian form in field 280.)

4.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Eseji
780	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Essays

5.   *

001	␣␣	**a**n **b**y **c**l
152	␣␣	**b**sgc
280	␣␣	**a**Glasba **z**17. stoletje
780	␣␣	**2**sgce **8**eng **a**Music **z**17th century
		(Reference record from the General List of Subject Headings (SGC).)

8XX SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK

FIELD LIST

The notes contain information on institutions responsible for the record, and notes by cataloguers from these institutions. The cataloguers' notes are primarily intended to guide other cataloguers and thus are usually not written in a form suitable for public display. Notes intended for public display are in *3XX – Notes Block*.

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE

This field identifies the agency responsible for the creation of the record and the date of the entry. The field is repeatable to show the transcribing, modifying or issuing agency. The date for new records is the date of the creation of the entry. For revised records, the date recorded is the date of the last revision.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
801		Originating source	r
	a	*Country*	nr
	b	*Agency*	nr
	c	*Date of latest transaction*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		*Not defined*
2		***Function performed by the agency***
	0	*original cataloguing agency*
	1	*transcribing agency*
	2	*modifying agency*
	3	*issuing agency*

SUBFIELDS

801a Country

The code of the country of the issuing agency. The country is coded according to the ISO 3166 standard.

801b Agency

The code of the agency from the *MARC Code List for Organizations*.

801c Date of latest transaction

The date of latest transaction recorded according to the ISO 8601 standard, i.e. in the form YYYYMMDD.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

In many cases the same agency will have carried out some or all indicated functions. The field should be repeated only when there are changes to transaction dates, cataloguing rules or formats. Where there are no changes, only the earliest occurrence of the field should be included.

RELATED FIELDS

100   *GENERAL PROCESSING DATA*

EXAMPLES

1.

801	⎵0	**a**US **b**DLC **c**19800516

2.

801	⎵3	**a**GB **b**bl **c**19831121

3.

801	⎵0	**a**FR **b**FR-693836101 **c**20070215
		(Authority record created by the Bibliothèque nationale de France.*)*

4.

801	⎵0	**a**RU **b**NLR **c**19961109

5. *

801	⎵0	**a**usa **b**NNHWW
801	⎵1	**a**usa **b**NNHWW **c**19821215
801	⎵2	**a**svn **b**SI-MaIIZ
		(The first two fields contain the code for the agency that is responsible for the cataloguing and transcribing of the record. The last field contains the code for the agency that modified the record.)

810 SOURCE DATA FOUND

This field contains a citation to a reference source when information about the access point was found. The bibliographic work for the cataloguing of which the access point has been established is usually entered in this field.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
810		Source data found	r
	a	*Citation*	nr
	b	*Information found*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

810a Citation

The citation of any source that provided information about the access point.

810b Information found

The subfield contains the information found in the source cited in subfield a (see examples 1, 4, 5)..

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

In this repeatable field a reference source for each different form of the personal name is entered.

RELATED FIELDS

    2XX   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

    4XX   *VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

5XX   *RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

7XX   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK*

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Avery, **b**Harold Eric
400	␣1	**a**Avery, **b**H.E.
810	␣␣	**a**His Advanced physical chemistry calculations, 1971: t.p. **b**(H. E. Avery, B.Sc., Ph.D., Dept. of Chem., Liverpool Polytechnic)

2.

200	␣1	**a**Hailsham of Saint Marylebone, **b**Quintin Hogg, **c**Baron
810	␣␣	**a**Who's Who

3.   *

200	␣1	**a**Kozinc **b**Željko
400	␣1	**5**e **a**Malik **b**Peter
810	␣␣	**a**Lep dan kliče : 150 izletov po Sloveniji / Željko Kozinc. - 1999
810	␣␣	**a**Lovci na Rembrandta / Peter Malik. - 1992

4.   *

200	␣1	**a**Herberstein **b**Žiga
400	␣1	**a**Herberstein **b**Sigismund
810	␣␣	**a**Enciklopedija Slovenije **b**Žiga Herberstein
810	␣␣	**a**Slovenski biografski leksikon **b**Sigismund Herberstein

5.   *

250	␣␣	**a**Dolomit
450	␣␣	**a**Grintavec (Kamnina)
450	␣␣	**a**Kalavec
810	␣␣	**a**Geološki terminološki slovar, 2006 **b**(dolomit: grintavec, kalavec)

815 SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND

This field contains the citations for consulted reference sources in which no information about the access point was found.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
815		Source data not found	nr
	a	*Citation*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

815a Citation

The citation of any source that provided no information about the access point. The subfield is repeated for each separate source cited.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that sources are cited wherever possible.

RELATED FIELDS

2XX *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

4XX *VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

5XX *RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

7XX *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK*

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Jones, **b**A. Wesley
815	␣␣	**a**Dir. Amer. schol., 1974; **a**National faculty dir., 1979; **a**Amer. men/women sci., soc. and beh. sci., 1978; **a**WWA., 1978-79

2.   *

200	␣1	**a**Zupančič **b**Tončka
810	␣␣	**a**Tehnika in delo. Učbenik za 5. razred / Tončka Zupančič. - 2001
815	␣␣	**a**SBL, PSBL

3.   *

152	␣␣	**b**sgc
250	␣␣	**a**Fragmentacija pomnilnika (računalništvo)
815	␣␣	**a**ISLOVAR : slovar informatike: http://www.islovar.org/ **a**Leksikon računalništva in informatike, 2002

820 USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION

This field contains information limiting the use of the 2XX field access point or differentiating entities with same or similar names.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
820		Usage or scope information	r
	a	*Note text*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

820a Note text

This subfield contains the text of the note.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that a note is made wherever necessary to avoid confusion between similar access points.

RELATED FIELDS

2XX   *AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK*

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Smithe, **b**Sam
820	␣␣	**a**Not to be confused with Smith, Sam

2.

| 200 | ⊔1 | **a**Lafontaine, **b**Jacques, **f**1944- |
| 820 | ⊔⊔ | **a**Ne pas confondre avec l'auteur né en 1933. |

3.   *

200	⊔1	**a**Zupančič **b**Jože **r**00798 **f**1939-2000
820	⊔⊔	**a**Ne zamenjuj: Zupančič, Jože (prevajalec)
820	⊔⊔	**a**Ne zamenjuj: Zupančič, Jože, 1935-, šifra raziskovalca 16074
820	⊔⊔	**a**Ne zamenjuj: Zupančič, Jože, 1946-, šifra raziskovalca 01340
820	⊔⊔	**a**Ne zamenjuj: Zupančič, Jože, 1963- (diplomant FOV)
820	⊔⊔	**a**Ne zamenjuj: Zupančič, Jože, diploma na Teološki fakulteti v Ljubljani, 1975
820	⊔⊔	**a**Obstaja še več soimenjakov na različnih področjih.

4.   *

| 200 | ⊔1 | **a**Štiglic **b**Franc |
| 820 | ⊔⊔ | **a**Ne zamenjuj: Štiglic, France, 1919- (filmski režiser) |

830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE

This field is used to record biographical, historical, or other information about the access point.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
830		General cataloguer's note	r
	a	*Note text*	r

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

830a Note text

This subfield contains the text of the note.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The data may include references to specific rules applied, notes justifying the choice of form of access point, etc. (see example 2). Such data could also appear as part of other fields, e.g. in field 810.

EXAMPLES

1.

200	␣1	**a**Korman, **b**Gerd
830	␣␣	**a**b. 1928; **a**PhD

2.

200	␣1	**a**Otter, **b**A.A. den, **f**1941-
830	␣␣	**a**AACR2 22.4A. Name established according to author's preference.

3. *

200	␣1	**a**Ružič **b**Ernest
400	␣0	**5**z **a**E. R.
400	␣0	**5**z **a**ER

| 830 | ␣␣ | **a**Podpisuje se tudi: e. R. in eR |

4. *

200	␣0	**a**Orakelj
830	␣␣	**a**Orakelj je psevdonim, avtor noče biti razrešen.
		(The record does not contain the real name. The note is not written for public display, it is intended only for cataloguers.)

5. *

| 250 | ␣␣ | **a**Egipčanska književnost v arabščini |
| 830 | ␣␣ | **a**Uredniška opomba: Povezave na geslo LCSH "Egyptian literature, Modern" ne dodamo. |

835 DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

This field is used to record why the access point in the 2XX field is being deleted from an authority file. It appears in field 835 in a record in which subfield *001a – Record status* contains code *"d" – deleted record* or *"r" – split record*.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
835		Deleted access point information	r
	a	*Note text*	r
	b	*Replacement access point*	r
	d	*Date of the transaction*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

835a Note text

This subfield contains an explanatory text note.

835b Replacement access point

This subfield contains the access point which has replaced the deleted access point in 2XX field.

835d Date of the transaction

This subfield contains the date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Subfield is mandatory if field 835 is used.

RELATED FIELDS

001a   *RECORD LABEL, Record status*

EXAMPLES

1. *

001	⊔⊔	**a**r
200	⊔1	**a**Bartol **b**Tomaž
835	⊔⊔	**a**Soimenjaka **b**Bartol, Tomaž, 1962- **b**Bartol, Tomaž, 1968- **d**20011212

836 REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

This field is used to record that the access point in field 836 is being replaced by the access point in 2XX field. Field 836 may be entered in the record in which subfield *001a – Record status* contains code *"c" – corrected or revised record* or *"n" – new record*.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
836		Replaced access point information	r
	b	*Replaced access point*	nr
	d	*Date of the transaction*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

836b Replaced access point

The subfield contains the access point which is being replaced by the access point in 2XX field.

836d Date of the transaction

The subfield contains the date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Subfield is mandatory if field 836 is used.

RELATED FIELDS

001a   *RECORD LABEL, Record status*

EXAMPLES

1.

001	␣␣	**an**

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**De Clerck **b**Charles |
| 836 | ␣␣ | **b**Clerck, Charles de **d**19871125 |

2.　*

001	␣␣	**a**n
200	␣1	**a**Milčinski **b**Fran **f**1867-1932
836	␣␣	**b**Milčinski, Fran **d**20011212

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

This field may be used in authority records to provide supplementary information available electronically about the entity for which the record was created.

The field contains the information required to locate an electronic item. It also contains data to retrieve the item by the access method identified in the first indicator position.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
856		Electronic location and access	r
	a	*Host name*	r
	b	*Access number*	r
	c	*Compression information*	r
	d	*Path*	r
	e	*Date and hour of consultation and access*	nr
	f	*Electronic name*	r
	g	*Uniform Resource Name*	r
	h	*Processor of request*	nr
	i	*Instruction*	r
	j	*Bits per second*	nr
	k	*Password*	nr
	l	*Logon/login*	nr
	m	*Contact for access assistance*	r
	n	*Name of location of host in subfield a*	nr
	o	*Operating system*	nr
	p	*Port*	nr
	q	*Electronic format type*	nr
	r	*Settings*	nr
	s	*File size*	r
	t	*Terminal emulation*	r
	u	*Uniform Resource Locator*	nr
	v	*Hours access method available*	r
	x	*Nonpublic note*	r
	y	*Access method*	nr
	w	*Record control number*	r
	z	*Public note*	r

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Access method***
	0	*Email*
	1	*FTP*
	2	*remote login (Telnet)*
	3	*dial-up*
	4	*HTTP*

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
	7	*method specified in subfield y*
	␣	*no information provided*
2		***Not defined***

The indicator 1 specifies the method of accessing the electronic resource.

The value "0" of the indicator 1 specifies that it is possible to access the electronic resource with an email. The value "1" of the indicator 1 enables entering data required for an electronic resource transfer; values "2" and "3" of the indicator enables data entry relating to the access method modes.

The value "7" of the indicator 1 is used by different access mode (entered in subfield y).

SUBFIELDS

856a Host name

This subfield contains the host address. It is repeatable when there are more addresses available for one host.

856b Access number

It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the item is an Internet resource or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system. A telephone number is recorded as follows: [country code]-[area code]-[telephone number], e.g. 49-69-15251140 (a number in Frankfurt, Germany), 1-202-7076237 (a number in the U.S., Washington, D.C.). If an extension is applicable, include it after the telephone number preceded by "x", e.g. 1-703-3589800x515 (a telephone number with extension).

856c Compression information

This subfield is used when special software is required for data decompression.

856d Path

The name of directory/subdirectory is entered where the file is located.

856e Date and hour of consultation and access

The time in the form YYYYMMDDHHMM, at which the electronic item was last accessed.

856f Electronic name

The electronic name of a file is entered as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield d on the host identified in subfield a. Subfield f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic item. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with its corresponding electronic name in subfield f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g. "*" or "?") if applicable, with a note in subfield z explaining how files are named. Filenames may be case sensitive for some systems.

This subfield may also contain the name of the electronic publication or conference.

856g Uniform Resource Name

The Uniform Resource Name (URN) is entered which provides a globally unique location independent identifier.

856h Processor of request

The username or processor of the request is entered in this subfield; generally the data which precedes the at sign "@" in the host address.

856i Instruction

An instruction or command is entered, needed for the remote host to process a request.

856j Bits per second

The lowest and highest number of bits of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second should be: [Lowest BPS]-[Highest BPS]. If only lowest given: [Lowest BPS]-. If only highest given: -[Highest BPS].

856k Password

Used to record general-use password, and should not contain passwords requiring security.

856l Logon/login

General-use logon/login strings which do not require special security.

856m Contact for access assistance

The address or a contact person is entered for access assistance.

856n Name of location of host in subfield a

The location of the host stated in subfield a is entered.

856o Operating system

For information, the operating sysem used by the host specified in subfield a is entered in this subfield.

856p Port

The portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host.

856q Electronic format type

This subfield contains an identification of the electronic format type (e.g. text/HTML, ASCII, postscript, computer program – exe or JPEG). The information is designated for the end users to determine how data are transferred through a network and how they can be used or be read (e.g. what software or hardware is required for the file to be displayed). Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII character set (i.e. the basic Latin script, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks). Text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non textual data (e.g. computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another file transfer mode, usually binary mode. Electronic format type may be taken from lists such as registered Internet Media types (MIME types).

856r Settings

The settings used for transferring data are entered. Included settings are:
- Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character),
- Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte), and

- Parity (the parity checking technique used).

The syntax of these elements is: [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-[Number of Stop Bits]. If only the parity is given, the other elements or settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e. [Parity]). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position, i.e. [Parity]--[Number of Stop Bits] or [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-. The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space) and M (Mark).

856s File size

The size of the file is entered as stored under the filename indicated in subfield f. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes. Subfield may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield f to which it applies.

856t Terminal emulation

The emulation of the terminal is entered in this field.

856u Uniform Resource Locator

The URL (Uniform Resource Locator) is entered which provides data in standard syntax needed for the electronic access. With URL address the electronic item should be located using existing Internet protocols (see examples).

856v Hours access method available

The hours are entered that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field.

856w Record control number

A control number of the record is entered in this subfield.

856x Nonpublic note

The information by cataloguers that is not suitable for library users.

856y Access method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value "7". This subfield may include access methods other than the main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds to the access schemes specified in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes.

856z Public note

Notes are entered that are suitable to be displayed for the library users.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

This field may be repeated when there are more different data relating to the title (subfields a, b, d) and when more different access modes are available. Some libraries may have different URL addresses for the same electronic resource. That is why the already exist fields 856 created by another library should not be changed in the shared cataloguing database; data is always entered in a new field 856, if it is necessary. This field may also be repeated when there are more filenames (subfield f), except for the completed item which is divided into more parts to be saved or searched online.

EXAMPLES

1.

| 200 | ␣1 | **a**Russell, **b**Bertrand, **f**1872-1970 |
| 856 | 4␣ | **u**http://plato.stanford.edu/entries/russell |

2.

| 210 | 02 | **a**Library of Congress. **b**Copyright Office |
| 856 | 4␣ | **u**http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright |

3.

| 210 | 12 | **a**International Conference on the Principles and Future Development of AACR2 |
| 856 | 4␣ | **u**http://www.nlc-bnc.ca/jsc/ |

4. *

200	␣1	**a**Vasle **b**Juan
400	␣1	**5**z **a**Vasle **b**Janez
830	␣␣	**a**Področje delovanja: operni pevec in novinar
856	4␣	**u**http://www2.arnes.si/guest/jvasle
856	0␣	**u**mailto:juan.vasle@guest.arnes.si

9XX NATIONAL USE BLOCK

FIELD LIST

This block is reserved for national and local use. Fields in this block are excluded from international exchange tapes.

911 NAME SOURCE*

This field contains data that may help in the distribution of records to be edited. The field was generated when authority records for authors were created automatically on the basis of author data in the bibliographic records.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
911		Name source*	nr
	a	*Institution/organization code*	r
	b	*Most frequent creator*	nr
	c	*Frequency*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

911a Institution/organization code

The code indicates the institution/organization where the author is publishing his works and which is used for the institution's bibliography display.

911b Most frequent creator

The name of the most frequent creator from the local database which has contributed to COBIB the greatest number of records relating to a certain author before the initial data conversion.

911c Frequency

The frequency of appearance of the author's name in COBIB on the day of the initial data conversion.

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Butina **b**Vida **r**00105
911	␣␣	**a**4-054 **a**4-006 **b**SURS::ANDREJA **c**9

2. *

200	␣1	**a**Škerget **b**Leopold **r**06428
911	␣␣	**a**3-206 **a**3-112 **a**3-204 **b**KTFMB::MAJA **c**532

915 UNLINKED SEE REFERENCE – PERSONAL NAME**

Field 915 was used in authority records that were automatically created on the basis of data from bibliographic records. During the initial data conversion the variant forms of personal names (variant access points) have been transferred in repeatable field 915 from fields 901 and 902 in the bibliographic database, which was not regularly linked to belonging fields 701 and 702 (there was no subfield 7016 for linking fields 701 and 901 or 702 and 902).

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
915		Unlinked see reference – personal name**	r
	a	*Entry element*	nr
	b	*Part of name (not entry element)*	nr
	c	*Additions other than dates*	r
	d	*Roman numerals*	nr
	f	*Dates*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr

Indicators

INDICATOR	VALUE	MEANING
1		***Not defined***
2		***Form of name indicator***
	0	*name entered under forename or direct order*
	1	*name entered under surname*

The indicator signifies whether the name is entered in direct order (only a forename or a forename and a surname) or under a surname (a surname and a forname).

SUBFIELDS

Subfields from a to f are described at field 200, and subfield 5 in the chapter Control Subfields.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The access point entered in this field is a variant or non-preferred form of the personal name.

It is necessary to check out if it is really a variant form of the personal name stated in field 200, since the data have been transferred automatically.

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Maček **b**Jože **r**00338
915	␣1	**a**Leskovšek **b**Mirko
		(In the bibliographic record field 901 was not connected to the belonging field 701; that is why inadequate name appears in field 915.)

916 CONVERSION NOTE*

During the initial data conversion the notes relating to the insufficient information in fields 70X and 90X in the bibliographic database are entered in fields 916.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
916		Conversion note*	r
	x	*Note text*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

916x Note text

During the initial data conversion the following notes are entered in fields 916 automatically:

- "Incorrect link to see reference heading in the bibliographic record <ID of the bibl. record>", if field 701 or 702 is incorrectly connected to field 901 or 902.

- "There are more personal name forms in the bibliographic database for the researcher code", if there are more personal name forms in the bibliographic database in different 70X fields for one researcher code.

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Koler-Povh **b**Teja **r**06926
916	␣␣	**x**Napačna povezava s kazalko v bibliografskem zapisu 57244416
916	␣␣	**x**Napačna povezava s kazalko v bibliografskem zapisu 114717696
916	␣␣	**x**Za šifro raziskovalca obstaja v bibliografski bazi več variant imena.

2. *

200	␣1	**a**Leben-Seljak **b**Petra **r**08630
400	␣1	**a**Seljak **b**Petra Leben-
400	␣1	**a**Leben **b**Petra
916	␣␣	**x**Za šifro raziskovalca obstaja v bibliografski bazi več variant imena.

		(During the initial data conversion the note was entered because there are more personal name forms in different 70X fields for one researcher code. In that case, the note probably signifies the different name forms of the same author.)

3.   *

200	␣1	**a**Virant **b**Jernej **r**00141
400	␣1	**a**Mraz **b**Miha
916	␣␣	**x**Za šifro raziskovalca obstaja v bibliografski bazi več variant imena. *(During the initial data conversion the note was entered because there are more name forms in different 70X fields in the bibliographic database for one researcher code. In that case, something is wrong with the bibliographic record because the both name forms are quite different and they probably signify two different authors.)*

950 UNLINKED RELATED ACCESS POINT*

This field contains a link to a related access point, for which an authority record has not been created yet. The field is intended for later automatic establishing of links between authority records, once they are created.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
950		Unlinked related access point*	r
	a	*Access point*	nr
	2	*System code*	nr
	3	*Record number*	nr
	5	*Relationship control*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

950a Access point

Use this subfield to enter the complete access point and all punctuation marks between individual pieces of data.

9502 System code

This code denotes the subject system that the access point belongs to.

9503 Record number

This subfield contains the identification number of an authority record from a foreign list.

9505 Relationship control

This code denotes the relationship between the related access point in field 950 and the authorized access point in field 2XX.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

The field 950 is only used in records in the General List of Subject Headings (SGC) authority database. The field is filled out when an authority record should be linked via a 5XX field to an authority record for a related term, but that is not possible because the latter record does not yet exist in the base. Therefore, enter the data on the related term to field 950 instead of filling out the 5XX field for the related term.

If possible, use the corresponding access point from the *Library of Congress Subject Headings (LCSH)* list or from the *Répertoire d'autorité-matière encyclopédique et alphabétique unifié (RAMEAU)* list as the link. Enter the access point to subfield a, the LCSH or RAMEAU system code to subfield 2, and the LCSH or RAMEAU record identification number to subfield 3. If neither LCSH nor RAMEAU contain the corresponding record for the related term, enter the access point written in Slovenian and created according to SGC rules to subfield 2, and leave subfield 3 empty.

EXAMPLES

1. *

250	␣␣	**a**Glinaste ploščice
950	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85131815 **5**g **a**Tablets (Paleography)
		(The General List of Subject Headings (SGC) database does not yet contain the corresponding broader term for the term Glinaste ploščice*. Therefore, you cannot enter the broader term to field 550. Use field 950 to enter the data on the broader term that can be found in LCSH.)*

2. *

250	␣␣	**a**Zdrava prehrana
950	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF11937798 **5**z **a**Diététique
		(The General List of Subject Headings (SGC) database does not yet contain a record for the related term Dietetika*. Therefore, you cannot enter field 550. Use field 950 to enter the data on the related term that can be found in RAMEAU.)*

990 RELINKING*

This field contains the information relating to the bibliographic records that should be relinked to some other authority record. The field is designated for automatic records relinking in bibliographic databases.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
990		Relinking*	r
	a	*Date*	nr
	b	*Bibliographic record ID*	r
	n	*Authority record ID*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

990a Date

The date of the relinking is entered in the form YYYYMMDD.

990b Bibliographic record ID

The repeated subfields contains IDs of the bibliographic records that should be relinked to the new authority record.

990n Authority record ID

The ID of the new authority record is entered in this subfield.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

If it is determined that fields in the bibliographic database for different persons with the same name are connected by mistake to the same authority record, it is necessary to divide such a record into more authority records. All records in the bibliographic database that are connected to such authority record should be reviewed in order to pair each record with a proper person.

Field 990 is used when there are comparatively fewer bibliographic records that should be relinked. There are more bibliographic records that stays connected to the already existing authority record; for all other persons the additional authority records should be created.

In the already existing authority record field 990 is entered for each authority record. Field should contain the ID of the new authority record entered in subfield n, and also the IDs of the bibliographic records that should be connected to that authority record, entered in repeated subfields b. In the process of adjustment of the bibliographic and the authority database, the linkage in the bibliographic records to the ID of the divided authority record has been replaced by the linkage to the ID of the new authority record.

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Milčinski **b**Fran **f**1867-1932
		(The authority record for Fran Milčinski (a.r.1.).)

*

200	␣1	**a**Milčinski **b**Frane **f**1914-1988
990	␣␣	**a**20011212 **b**<b.z.1> **n**<n.z.1>
		(The authority record for Frane Milčinski. The bibliographic record (b.r.1) was connected by mistake to the authority record for Frane Milčinski instead to be connected to the record for Fran Milčinski (a.r.1). The linkage – subfield 3 in field 70X in the bibliographic database – should be corrected automatically.)

991 EDITOR'S NOTES*

This field is used by members of the editorial board to exchange information on creating and updating records.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
991		Editor's notes*	r
	a	*Note*	nr
	b	*Note author*	nr
	c	*Note date*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

991a Note

Use this subfield to enter instructions for creating a record or any related comments.

991b Note author

Forename and surname of the person who entered this field.

991c Note date

The date of the note entered in the form YYYYMMDD.

NOTES ON FIELD CONTENTS

Field 991 is used by members of the editorial board when creating or updating a record. After the editing is finished and the record is verified, field 991 is deleted.

EXAMPLES

1. *

250	␣␣	**a**Optični pomnilniki
450	␣␣	**a**Optični nosilci podatkov
450	␣␣	**a**Optični pomnilni mediji
450	␣␣	**2**lc **3**sh 85095172 **5**n **8**eng **a**Optical storage devices
450	␣␣	**2**ram **3**FRBNF12062743 **5**n **8**fre **a**Mémoires optiques
450	␣␣	**2**sears **3**SSEA85000383 **5**n **8**eng **a**Optical storage devices
991	␣␣	**a**Pri neizbranih izrazih v poljih 4XX dodaj tudi podpolje 9. **b**Barbara Novak **c**20180205
		(The editor noticed that subfield 9 is missing in fields 450.)

2. *

991	␣␣	**a**Zapis sem zavrnil. Vnesti bi ga morala v masko za napotilni zapis. **b**Janez Košir **c**20180205

3. *

991	␣␣	**a**Dodan neizbrani izraz. Ali je v redu? **b**Barbara Novak **c**20180201
991	␣␣	**a**Neizbrani izraz Armenija (Republika : bajerji) ni veljaven. Spremembe zapisa so zavrnjene. **b**Janez Košir **c**20180205

992 FIELD FOR LOCAL NEEDS*

This subfield is used for entering data relating to the local library needs.

Subfields & repeatability

FIELD/SUBFIELD			REPEATABILITY
992		Field for local needs*	nr
	b	*Record marks*	nr

Indicators

Indicator values are not defined.

SUBFIELDS

992b Record marks

This subfield is designated for entering record marks that enable different selection and display of the records.

Records that have been marked may be later displayed within different lists, statistics, etc. (e.g. statistics of a particular cataloguer's job; marks are separated from each other by a comma).

EXAMPLES

1. *

200	␣1	**a**Dabsch **b**Julius
992	␣␣	**b**aik0207tm

A FIELD/SUBFIELD LIST

A.1 AUTHORITY RECORDS (CONOR)

Legend:

Ind.	:	Indicators (default values)
␣	:	Blank, no indicator
PN	:	Personal names
CB	:	Corporations
-	:	Subfield is not present.
0	:	Subfield is in a sample.
1	:	Subfield is mandatory.
Rep.	:	Repeatability
R	:	Subfield is repeatable.
NR	:	Subfield is not repeatable.
Len.	:	Length
v	:	It is possible to enter less than prescribed number of characters.
Def.	:	Default value

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample PN	CB	Rep.	Len.	Def.
000	IDENTIFICATION BLOCK	␣␣			NR		
001	RECORD LABEL	␣␣			NR		
a	Record status		1	1	NR	1	n
b	Type of record		1	1	NR	1	x
c	Type of entity		1	1	NR	1	a[1]
g	Encoding level		0	0	NR	1	
x	Replacement record ID*		0	0	NR	200^v	
010	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NAME IDENTIFIER (ISNI)	␣␣			NR		
a	Number (ISNI)		0	0	NR	16^v	
y	Cancelled ISNI		0	0	R		
z	Erroneous ISNI		0	0	R		
017	OTHER IDENTIFIER	␣␣			R		
a	Identifier		0	0	NR	79^v	
b	Qualification		0	0	NR		
z	Erroneous identifier		0	0	R		
2	System code		0	0	NR	20^v	
035	CONTROL NUMBERS OF RECORDS IN OTHER SYSTEMS	␣␣			R		
a	System control number		0	0	NR		
z	Cancelled or invalid control number		0	0	R		

---

[1] The default value of the entity type is different in different input masks. In the input mask PN the default value is "a", and in the input mask CB it is "b".

		Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample PN CB		Rep.	Len.	Def.
100		GENERAL PROCESSING DATA	⎵⎵			NR		
	b	Status of authorized access point code		1	1	NR	1	
	c	Language of cataloguing		1	1	NR	3	slv[2]
	d	Transliteration code[3]		-	-	NR	1	
	g	Script of cataloguing		1	1	NR	2	ba[4]
101		LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Language used by the entity		0	0	R	3	
102		NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Country of nationality		0	0	R	3	
	b	Locality		0	0	R	2	
106		ACCESS POINT USED AS SUBJECT	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Use of the access point		0	0	NR	1	0[5]
120		CODED DATA FOR PERSONAL NAME	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Gender of entity		0	-	NR	1	
	b	Differentiated or undifferentiated personal name		0	-	NR	1	
150		CODED DATA FOR CORPORATE NAME	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Type of government agency		-	0	NR	1	
	b	Conference or meeting code		-	0	NR	1	
152		RULES	⎵⎵			NR		
	a	Cataloguing rules		0	0	NR	10ᵛ	PPIAK[4]
190		DATE OF BIRTH/BEGINNING*	11			NR		
	a	Year		0	0	NR	4	
	b	Month		0	0	NR	2	
	c	Day		0	0	NR	2	
191		DATE OF DEATH/ENDING*	11			NR		
	a	Year		0	0	NR	4	
	b	Month		0	0	NR	2	
	c	Day		0	0	NR	2	
200		AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME[6]	⎵1			NR		
	a	Entry element		1	-	NR		
	b	Part of name (not entry element)		0	-	NR		
	c	Additions other than dates		0	-	R		
	d	Roman numerals		0	-	NR		
	f	Dates		0	-	NR		
	r	Researcher code*		0	-	NR	5ᵛ	
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	3	
210		AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME[6]	02			NR		
	a	Entry element		-	1	NR		
	b	Subdivision		-	0	R		
	c	Addition to name or qualifier		-	0	R		
	d	Number of meeting		-	0	NR		

---

[2] The default value of the language of cataloguing depends on the language that is used in the COBISS system.
[3] The subfield is used in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in multiple scripts or languages.
[4] The default value is different in different COBISS systems.
[5] The default value is set only in the input mask CB.
[6] The subfield is repeatable in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in multiple scripts.
[7] The subfield is used in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in multiple scripts or languages.

		Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample PN	CB	Rep.	Len.	Def.
	e	Location of meeting		-	0	R		
	f	Date of meeting		-	0	NR	9^v	
	g	Inverted element		-	0	NR		
	h	Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	0	NR		
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	3	
300		INFORMATION NOTE	0␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	NR		
320		GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE	␣␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	NR		
330		GENERAL SCOPE NOTE	0␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	NR		
340		BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE	␣␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	NR		
400		VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	␣1			R		
	a	Entry element		0	-	NR		
	b	Part of name (not entry element)		0	-	NR		
	c	Additions other than dates		0	-	R		
	d	Roman numerals		0	-	NR		
	f	Dates		0	-	NR		
	5	Relationship control		0	-	NR	4^v	
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point		0	-	NR	3	
410		VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	02			R		
	a	Entry element		-	0	NR		
	b	Subdivision		-	0	R		
	c	Addition to name or qualifier		-	0	R		
	d	Number of meeting		-	0	NR		
	e	Location of meeting		-	0	R		
	f	Date of meeting		-	0	NR	9^v	
	g	Inverted element		-	0	NR		
	h	Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	0	NR		
	5	Relationship control		-	0	NR	4^v	
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point		-	0	NR	3	
500		RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	␣1			R		
	a	Entry element		0	0	NR		
	b	Part of name (not entry element)		0	0	NR		
	c	Additions other than dates		0	0	R		
	d	Roman numerals		0	0	NR		
	f	Dates		0	0	NR		
	3	Record number		0	0	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	NR	4^v	
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	3	
510		RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	02			R		
	a	Entry element		0	0	NR		

		Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample PN	CB	Rep.	Len.	Def.
	b	Subdivision		0	0	R		
	c	Addition to name or qualifier		0	0	R		
	d	Number of meeting		0	0	NR		
	e	Location of meeting		0	0	R		
	f	Date of meeting		0	0	NR	9^v	
	g	Inverted element		0	0	NR		
	h	Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	0	NR		
	3	Record number		0	0	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	NR	4^v	
	7	Script of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point[7]		-	-	NR	3	
686		OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS	␣␣			R		
	a	Number		0	-	NR	70^v	
	2	System code		0	-	NR	20^v	
700		AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME[8]	␣1			R		
	a	Entry element		-	-	NR		
	b	Part of name (not entry element)		-	-	NR		
	c	Additions other than dates		-	-	R		
	d	Roman numerals		-	-	NR		
	f	Dates		-	-	NR		
	3	Record number		-	-	NR	15^v	
	7	Script of the base access point		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point		-	-	NR	3	
710		AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME[8]	02			R		
	a	Entry element		-	-	NR		
	b	Subdivision		-	-	R		
	c	Addition to name or qualifier		-	-	R		
	d	Number of meeting		-	-	NR		
	e	Location of meeting		-	-	R		
	f	Date of meeting		-	-	NR		
	g	Inverted element		-	-	NR		
	h	Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	-	NR		
	3	Record number		-	-	NR	15^v	
	7	Script of the base access point		-	-	NR	2	
	9	Language of the base access point		-	-	NR	3	
810		SOURCE DATA FOUND	␣␣			R		
	a	Citation		0	0	NR		
	b	Information found		0	0	NR		
815		SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND	␣␣			NR		
	a	Citation		0	0	R		
820		USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION	␣␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	R		
830		GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE	␣␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	R		
835		DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	␣␣			R		
	a	Note text		0	0	R		

---

[8] The field is used in the COBISS systems that require catalogues in multiple languages.

		Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample PN	CB	Rep.	Len.	Def.
	b	Replacement access point		0	0	R		
	d	Date of the transaction		0	0	NR	8^v	
836		REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	⊔⊔			R		
	b	Replaced access point		0	0	NR		
	d	Date of the transaction		0	0	NR	8^v	
856		ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	4⊔			R		
	a	Host name		0	0	R		
	b	Access number		0	0	R		
	c	Compression information		0	0	R		
	d	Path		0	0	R		
	e	Date and hour of consultation and access		-	-	NR	12^v	
	f	Electronic name		0	0	R		
	g	Uniform Resource Name		0	0	R		
	h	Processor of request		0	0	NR		
	i	Instruction		0	0	R		
	j	Bits per second		0	0	NR		
	k	Password		0	0	NR		
	l	Logon/login		0	0	NR		
	m	Contact for access assistance		0	0	R		
	n	Name of location of host in subfield a		0	0	NR		
	o	Operating system		0	0	NR		
	p	Port		0	0	NR		
	q	Electronic format type		0	0	NR		
	r	Settings		0	0	NR		
	s	File size		0	0	R		
	t	Terminal emulation		0	0	R		
	u	Uniform Resource Locator		0	0	NR		
	v	Hours access method available		0	0	R		
	x	Nonpublic note		0	0	R		
	y	Access method		0	0	NR		
	w	Record control number		0	0	R		
	z	Public note		0	0	R		
911		NAME SOURCE*	⊔⊔			NR		
	a	Institution/organization code		0	0	R	20^v	
	b	Most frequent creator		0	-	NR		
	c	Frequency		0	0	NR		
915		UNLINKED SEE REFERENCE – PERSONAL NAME**	1⊔			R		
	a	Entry element		-	-	NR		
	b	Part of name (not entry element)		-	-	NR		
	c	Additions other than dates		-	-	R		
	d	Roman numerals		-	-	NR		
	f	Dates		-	-	NR		
	5	Relationship control		-	-	NR	1^v	
916		CONVERSION NOTE*	⊔⊔			R		
	x	Note text		0	-	NR		
990		RELINKING*	⊔⊔			R		
	a	Date		0	0	NR	8^v	
	b	Bibliographic record ID		0	0	R	10^v	
	n	Authority record ID		0	0	NR	15^v	
992		FIELD FOR LOCAL NEEDS*	⊔⊔			NR		

Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample		Rep.	Len.	Def.
		PN	CB			
b Record marks		0	0	NR		

Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample		Rep.	Len.	Def.
		PN	CB			

A FIELDS/SUBFIELDS LIST

A.2 SGC RECORDS

A.2.1 AUTHORITY RECORDS (SGC)

Legend:

Ind.	:	Indicators (default values)
␣	:	Blank, no indicator
PN	:	Personal names
CB	:	Corporations
GN	:	Geographical names
FN	:	Family names
UT	:	Titles
NT	:	Name/Title
ET	:	Conventional name/title for legal and religious texts
TN	:	Topical subjects
FS	:	Forms, genres or physical characteristics
-	:	Subfield is not present.
0	:	Subfield is in a sample.
1	:	Subfield is mandatory.
Rep.	:	Repeatability
R	:	Subfield is repeatable.
NR	:	Subfield is not repeatable.
Len.	:	Length
v	:	It is possible to enter less than prescribed number of characters.
Def.	:	Default value

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
000	SYSTEM FIELD	␣␣										NR		
001	RECORD LABEL	␣␣										NR		
a	Record status		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	n
b	Type of record		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	x
c	Type of entity		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	a[1]
g	Encoding level		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	1	
x	Replacement record ID*		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	200^v	
035	CONTROL NUMBERS OF RECORDS IN OTHER SYSTEMS	␣␣										R		
a	System control number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
z	Cancelled or invalid control number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
100	GENERAL PROCESSING DATA	␣␣										NR		
b	Status of authorized access point code		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	

---

[1] In mask PN the default value is "a", in mask CB the value is "b", in mask GN the value is "c", in mask FN the value is "e", in mask UT the value is "f", in mask NT the value is "h", in mask ET the value is "i", in mask TN the value is"j", in mask FS the value is "l".

Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
c Language of cataloguing		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	3	slv
d Transliteration code		0	0	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	NR	1	
g Script of cataloguing		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	2	ba
101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY	⊔⊔										NR		
a Language used by the entity		0	0	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	R	3	
102 NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY	⊔⊔										NR		
a Country of nationality		0	0	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	R	3	xxx[2]
b Locality		0	0	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	R	2	
106 ACCESS POINT USED AS SUBJECT	⊔⊔										NR		
a Use of the access point		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	
120 CODED DATA FOR PERSONAL NAME	⊔⊔										NR		
a Gender of entity		1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	1	
b Differentiated or undifferentiated personal name		1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	1	
123 CODED DATA FOR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	⊔⊔										R		
d Co-ordinates – westernmost longitude		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	8	
e Co-ordinates – easternmost longitude		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	8	
f Co-ordinates – northernmost latitude		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	8	
g Co-ordinates – southernmost latitude		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	8	
128 CODED DATA FOR FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY	⊔⊔										R		
a Form of musical work		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	3^v	
d Key or mode of musical work		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	3^v	
150 CODED DATA FOR CORPORATE NAME	⊔⊔										NR		
a Type of government agency		-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	1	
b Conference or meeting code		-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	1	
152 RULES	⊔⊔										NR		
a Cataloguing rules		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	NR	10^v	
b Subject system		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	sgc[3]
154 CODED DATA FOR TITLE	⊔⊔										NR		
a Title data		-	-	-	-	0	0	0	-	-	NR	1	
160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE	⊔⊔										NR		
a Geographic area code		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	R	7	
b Local geographic area code*		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	R	7	
180 CODED DATA FOR FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	⊔⊔										NR		
a Form or genre or physical characteristics code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	NR	1	
190 DATE OF BIRTH/BEGINNING*	11										NR		
a Year		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	4	
b Month		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	2	
c Day		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	2	
191 DATE OF DEATH/ENDING*	11										NR		

---

[2] The default value in input masks NT and ET is "xxx".
[3] The default value of the subject system is different in individual COBISS systems; in the COBISS.SI system, the default value in input mask TN is "sgc".

Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
a Year		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	4	
b Month		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	2	
c Day		0	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	2	
192 SUBTYPE OF ENTITY*	␣␣										NR		
a Subtype of entity		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	2	
200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	␣1										NR		
a Entry element		1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
b Part of name (not entry element)		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
c Additions other than dates		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
d Roman numerals		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
f Dates		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
r Researcher code*		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	5ᵛ	
9 Language of the base access point		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	‖										NR		
a Entry element		-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
b Subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
d Number of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
e Location of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
f Date of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	9ᵛ	
g Inverted element		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
9 Language of the base access point		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	␣␣										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	␣␣										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
c Type of family		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
f Dates		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	␣␣										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	NR		
h Number of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
i Name of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
k Date of publication		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	20ᵛ	
l Form subheading		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
m Language		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
n Miscellaneous information		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
q Version (or date of version)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
r Medium of performance (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
s Numeric designation (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
u Key (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
w Arranged statement (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	3	

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample									Rep.	Len.	Def.
			PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS			
240	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE	⊔⊔										NR		
a	Name		-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	NR		
t	Title		-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR	3	
243	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	⊔|										NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	NR		
t	Conventional title		-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	
250	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	⊔⊔										NR		
a	Topical subject		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	NR		
n	Subject category code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	NR	1	
m	Subject subcategory code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	NR	2	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	NR	3	
280	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	⊔⊔										NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
300	INFORMATION NOTE	1⊔										R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
305	TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE	1⊔										R		
a	Instruction phrase		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
b	Access point referred to		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
330	GENERAL SCOPE NOTE	1⊔										R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
340	BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE	⊔⊔										R		
a	Note text		0	0	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
356	GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE	⊔⊔										R		
a	Note text		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
400	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	⊔1										R		
a	Entry element		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
b	Part of name (not entry element)		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
c	Additions other than dates		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
d	Roman numerals		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
f	Dates		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
g	Expansion of initials of forename		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
x	Topical subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
2	System code		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	

Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
9 Language of the base access point		0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
410 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME**	‖										R		
a Entry element		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
b Subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
d Number of meeting		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
e Location of meeting		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
f Date of meeting		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	9^v	
g Inverted element		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
j Form subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
x Topical subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
2 System code		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
415 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME**	⊔⊔										R		
a Entry element		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
j Form subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
x Topical subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
2 System code		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
420 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME**	⊔⊔										R		
a Entry element		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
c Type of family		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
f Dates		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
j Form subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	R		
x Topical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	R		
2 System code		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
430 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE**	⊔⊔										R		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
h Number of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
i Name of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
j Form subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
k Date of publication		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	20^v	
l Form subheading		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
m Language		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample									Rep.	Len.	Def.
			PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS			
n	Miscellaneous information		-	-	∘	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
q	Version (or date of version)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
r	Medium of performance (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
s	Numeric designation (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
u	Key (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
w	Arranged statement (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	z	0	-	-	0	0	R		
2	System code		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
440	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/ TITLE**	␣␣										R		
a	Name		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR		
j	Form subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	R		
t	Title		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	R		
2	System code		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	NR	3	
443	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS**	␣|										R		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR		
j	Form subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	R		
t	Conventional title		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	R		
2	System code		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	
450	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT**	␣␣										R		
a	Topical subject		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
x	Topical subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	R		
2	System code		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3	

Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	␣␣										R		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR		
x Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	R		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	␣1										R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
b Part of name (not entry element)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
c Additions other than dates		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
d Roman numerals		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
f Dates		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	||										R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
b Subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
d Number of meeting		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
e Location of meeting		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
f Date of meeting		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	9^v	
g Inverted element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	␣␣										R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
x Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
z Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	␣␣										R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
c Type of family		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
f Dates		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
530		RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	␣␣										R		
	a	Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	h	Number of section or part		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
	i	Name of section or part		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
	k	Date of publication		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	20^v	
	l	Form subheading		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	m	Language		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	n	Miscellaneous information		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
	q	Version (or date of version)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	r	Medium of performance (for music)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
	s	Numeric designation (for music)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	R		
	u	Key (for music)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	w	Arranged statement (for music)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
	9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
540		RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/ TITLE	␣␣										R		
	a	Name		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	t	Title		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
	9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
543		RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	␣|										R		
	a	Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	b	Subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	R		
	c	Addition to name or qualifier		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	R		
	f	Date of legal issue or version		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	NR		
	i	Name of section or part		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	R		
	l	Form subheading		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	NR		
	n	Miscellaneous information		0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	NR		
	t	Conventional title		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR		
	3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	4^v	
	9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	NR	3	
550		RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	␣␣										R		
	a	Topical subject		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
	x	Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
	y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
	z	Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
	3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	70^v	
	5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
	9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
580		RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	␣␣										R		
	a	Entry element		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
	x	Topical subdivision		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	R		
	y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	R		
	z	Chronological subdivision		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	R		

Field/Subfield	Ind.	PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS	Rep.	Len.	Def.
3 Record number		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	-	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)	⌴⌴										R		
a Number		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	NR		
v Edition		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
686 OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS	⌴⌴										R		
a Number		0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	70^v	
2 System code		0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	20^v	
700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME	⌴1										NR		
a Entry element		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR		
b Part of name (not entry element)		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR		
c Additions other than dates		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	R		
d Roman numerals		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR		
f Dates		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR		
2 System code		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR	10^v	sgce
2 System code		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR	3	eng
8 Language of cataloguing		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		0	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	:	NR	3	
710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	‖										NR		
a Entry element		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
b Subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
d Number of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
e Location of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	R		
f Date of meeting		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
g Inverted element		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
2 System code		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	⌴1										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
2 System code		-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3^v	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME	⌴1										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
c Type of family		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		
f Dates		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR		

Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample									Rep.	Len.	Def.
		PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS			
2 System code		-	-	·	1	-	-	-	-	-	NR	10ᵛ	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE	␣1										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
h Number of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
i Name of section or part		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
k Date of publication		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	20ᵛ	
l Form subheading		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
m Language		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
n Miscellaneous information		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
q Version (or date of version)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
r Medium of performance (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
s Numeric designation (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	R		
u Key (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
w Arranged statement (for music)		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	10ᵛ	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE	␣1										NR		
a Name		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR		
t Title		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR	10ᵛ	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	NR	3	
743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	␣|										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR		
t Conventional title		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	10ᵛ	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	
750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	␣␣										NR		
a Topical subject		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	NR	10ᵛ	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	NR	3	
780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	␣␣										NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	NR	10ᵛ	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample									Rep.	Len.	Def.
			PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS			
801	ORIGINATING SOURCE	␣3										R		
a	Country		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR	3ᵛ	
b	Agency		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR		
c	Date of latest transaction		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	NR	8ᵛ	
810	SOURCE DATA FOUND	␣␣										R		
a	Citation		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
b	Information found		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
815	SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND	␣␣										NR		
a	Citation		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
820	USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION	␣␣										R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
830	GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE	␣␣										R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
835	DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	␣␣										R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
b	Replacement access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
d	Date of the transaction		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	8ᵛ	
836	REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION	␣␣										R		
b	Replaced access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
d	Date of the transaction		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	8ᵛ	
856	ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	4␣										R		
a	Host name		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
b	Access number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
c	Compression information		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
d	Path		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
e	Date and hour of consultation and access		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	12ᵛ	
f	Electronic name		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
g	Uniform Resource Name		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
h	Processor of request		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
i	Instruction		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
j	Bits per second		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
k	Password		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
l	Logon/login		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
m	Contact for access assistance		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
n	Name of location of host in subfield a		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
o	Operating system		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
p	Port		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
q	Electronic format type		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
r	Settings		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
s	File size		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
t	Terminal emulation		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
u	Uniform Resource Locator		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
v	Hours access method available		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
x	Nonpublic note		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
y	Access method		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
w	Record control number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		
z	Public note		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	R		

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample									Rep.	Len.	Def.
			PN	CB	GN	FN	UT	NT	ET	TN	FS			
950	UNLINKED RELATED ACCESS POINT*	␣␣										R		
a	Access point		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
2	System code		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
991	EDITOR'S NOTES*	␣␣										R		
a	Note		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		
b	Note author		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	30^v	
c	Note date		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR	8^v	
992	FIELD FOR LOCAL NEEDS*	␣␣										NR		
b	Record marks		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NR		

A.2.2 REFERENCE AND GENERAL EXPLANATORY RECORDS (SGC)

Legend:

Ind.	:	Indicators (default values)
␣	:	Blank, no indicator
CBR	:	Corporate bodies (reference records)
GNR	:	Geographical names (reference records)
TNR	:	Topical subjects (reference records)
FSR	:	Forms, genres or physical characteristics (reference records)
GER	:	General explanatory records
-	:	Subfield is not present.
0	:	Subfield is in a sample.
1	:	Subfield is mandatory.
Rep.	:	Repeatability
R	:	Subfield is repeatable.
NR	:	Subfield is not repeatable.
Len.	:	Length
v	:	It is possible to enter less than prescribed number of characters.
Def.	:	Default value

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample					Rep.	Len.	Def.
			CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
000	SYSTEM FIELD	␣␣						NR		
001	RECORD LABEL	␣␣						NR		
a	Record status		1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	n
b	Type of record		1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	y[4]
c	Type of entity		1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	b[5]
g	Encoding level		0	0	0	0	0	NR	1	

---

[4] The default value of the record type is different in individual input masks. In masks CBR, GNR, TNR and FSR the default value is "y" and in mask GER the value is "z".

[5] In mask CBR the default value is "b", in mask GNR the value is "c", in mask TNR the value is "j", in mask FSR the value is "l". The default value is not specified in mask GER.

| | Field/Subfield | Ind. | Sample | | | | | Rep. | Len. | Def. |
			CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
x	Replacement record ID*		0	0	0	0	0	NR	200ᵛ	
035	CONTROL NUMBERS OF RECORDS IN OTHER SYSTEMS	⊔⊔						R		
a	System control number		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
z	Cancelled or invalid control number		0	0	0	0	-	R		
100	GENERAL PROCESSING DATA	⊔⊔						NR		
b	Status of authorized access point code		1	1	1	1	1	NR	1	x
c	Language of cataloguing		1	1	1	1	1	NR	3	slv
d	Transliteration code		-	-	-	-	-	NR	1	
g	Script of cataloguing		1	1	1	1	1	NR	2	ba
152	RULES	⊔⊔						NR		
a	Cataloguing rules		0	0	-	-	0	NR	10ᵛ	
b	Subject system		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	sgc⁶
160	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE	⊔⊔						NR		
a	Geographic area code		-	1	0	0	-	R	7	
b	Local geographic area code*		-	0	0	0	-	R	7	
180	CODED DATA FOR FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	⊔⊔						NR		
a	Form or genre or physical characteristics code		-	-	-	1	-	NR	1	
192	SUBTYPE OF ENTITY*	⊔⊔						NR		
a	Subtype of entity		-	0	0	-	-	NR	2	
200	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	⊔|						NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
210	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	||						NR		
a	Entry element		1	-	-	-	0	NR		
b	Subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
c	Addition to name or qualifier		0	-	-	-	-	R		
d	Number of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
e	Location of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	R		
f	Date of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	NR	9ᵛ	
g	Inverted element		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
h	Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
9	Language of the base access point		0	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
215	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	⊔⊔						NR		
a	Entry element		-	1	-	-	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	R		
9	Language of the base access point		-	0	-	-	0	NR	3	

---

⁶ The default value of the subject system is different in individual COBISS systems; in the COBISS.SI system, the default value in input mask TNR is "sgc".

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER	Rep.	Len.	Def.
220	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	␣␣						NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
230	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	␣␣						NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
250	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	␣␣						NR		
a	Topical subject		-	-	1	-	0	NR		
n	Subject category code		-	-	0	-	-	NR	1	
m	Subject subcategory code		-	-	0	-	-	NR	2	
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
280	AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	␣␣						NR		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	1	-	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	-	NR	3	
300	INFORMATION NOTE	1␣						R		
a	Note text		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
310	TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE	1␣						R		
a	Instruction phrase		1	1	1	1	-	R		
b	Access point referred to		1	1	1	1	-	R		
320	GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE	␣␣						R		
a	Note text		-	-	-	-	1	NR		
356	GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE	␣␣						R		
a	Note text		-	0	-	-	-	NR		
400	VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	␣|						R		
a	Entry element		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
b	Part of name (not entry element)		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
c	Additions other than dates		-	-	0	-	0	R		
d	Roman numerals		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
f	Dates		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
g	Expansion of initials of forename		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
2	System code		-	-	0	-	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	0	-	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	0	-	0	NR	4^v	

Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample					Rep.	Len.	Def.
		CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
410 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME**	‖						R		
a Entry element		0	-	0	-	0	NR		
b Subdivision		0	-	0	-	0	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		0	-	0	-	0	R		
d Number of meeting		0	-	0	-	0	NR		
e Location of meeting		0	-	0	-	0	R		
f Date of meeting		0	-	0	-	0	NR	9^v	
g Inverted element		0	-	0	-	0	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	-	0	-	0	NR		
j Form subdivision		0	-	0	-	0	R		
x Topical subdivision		0	-	0	-	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
2 System code		0	-	0	-	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		0	-	0	-	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		0	-	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		0	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		0	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
415 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME**	⎵⎵						R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
j Form subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
x Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
y Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
2 System code		0	0	0	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
420 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME**	⎵⎵						R		
a Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
c Type of family		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
2 System code		-	-	-	-	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	-	-	-	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	-	-	-	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
430 **VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE**	⎵⎵						R		
a Entry element		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
h Number of section or part		-	-	0	-	0	R		
i Name of section or part		-	-	0	-	0	R		
j Form subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
k Date of publication		-	-	0	-	0	NR	20^v	
l Form subheading		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
m Language		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
n Miscellaneous information		-	-	0	-	0	R		
q Version (or date of version)		-	-	0	-	0	NR		

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER	Rep.	Len.	Def.
r	Medium of performance (for music)		-	-	0	-	0	R		
s	Numeric designation (for music)		-	-	0	-	0	R		
u	Key (for music)		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
w	Arranged statement (for music)		-	-	0	-	0	NR		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	0	-	0	R		
2	System code		-	-	0	-	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	0	-	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	0	NR	3	
440	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE**	␣␣						R		
a	Name		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
t	Title		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
2	System code		-	-	-	-	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	-	-	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	-	-	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
443	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS**	␣|						R		
a	Entry element		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
t	Conventional title		-	-	-	-	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	-	0	R		
2	System code		-	-	-	-	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		-	-	-	-	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		-	-	-	-	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		-	-	-	-	0	NR	3	
450	**VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT**	␣␣						R		
a	Topical subject		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
j	Form subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
x	Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
2	System code		0	0	0	0	0	NR	10^v	
3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	NR	15^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
8	Language of cataloguing		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	

Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample					Rep.	Len.	Def.
		CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE ⊔⊔ OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS							R		
a Entry element		-	-	-	0	0	NR		
x Topical subdivision		-	-	-	0	0	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	0	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	0	0	R		
2 System code		-	-	-	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		-	-	-	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		-	-	-	0	0	NR	4^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	0	NR	3	
500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME	⊔|						R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
b Part of name (not entry element)		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
c Additions other than dates		0	0	0	-	0	R		
d Roman numerals		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
f Dates		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	||						R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
b Subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		0	0	0	-	0	R		
d Number of meeting		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
e Location of meeting		0	0	0	-	0	R		
f Date of meeting		0	0	0	-	0	NR	9^v	
g Inverted element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL ⊔⊔ OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME							R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
x Topical subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	R		
z Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	-	0	R		
3 Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME	⊔⊔						R		
a Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
c Type of family		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
f Dates		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3 Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	

	Field/Subfield	Ind.	Sample					Rep.	Len.	Def.
			CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
530	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE	⊔⊔						R		
a	Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
h	Number of section or part		0	0	0	-	0	R		
i	Name of section or part		0	0	0	-	0	R		
k	Date of publication		0	0	0	-	0	NR	20^v	
l	Form subheading		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
m	Language		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
n	Miscellaneous information		0	0	0	-	0	R		
q	Version (or date of version)		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
r	Medium of performance (for music)		0	0	0	-	0	R		
s	Numeric designation (for music)		0	0	0	-	0	R		
u	Key (for music)		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
w	Arranged statement (for music)		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3	Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
540	RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE	⊔⊔						R		
a	Name		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
t	Title		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3	Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
543	RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS	⊔|						R		
a	Entry element		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
b	Subdivision		0	0	0	-	-	R		
c	Addition to name or qualifier		0	0	0	-	-	R		
f	Date of legal issue or version		0	0	0	-	-	NR		
i	Name of section or part		0	0	0	-	-	R		
l	Form subheading		0	0	0	-	-	NR		
n	Miscellaneous information		0	0	0	-	-	NR		
t	Conventional title		0	0	0	-	0	NR		
3	Record number		0	0	0	-	0	NR	70^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	-	0	NR	4^v	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	-	0	NR	3	
550	RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	⊔⊔						R		
a	Topical subject		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
z	Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
3	Record number		0	0	0	0	0	NR	70^v	
5	Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
9	Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
580	RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	⊔⊔						R		
a	Entry element		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
x	Topical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
y	Geographical subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		

| Field/Subfield | Ind. | Sample | | | | | Rep. | Len. | Def. |
		CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER			
z Chronological subdivision		0	0	0	0	0	R		
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	NR	70^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
9 Language of the base access point		0	0	0	0	0	NR	3	
675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)	⎕⎕						R		
a Number		1	1	1	1	0	NR		
v Edition		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME	‖						NR		
a Entry element		1	-	-	-	-	NR		
b Subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
c Addition to name or qualifier		0	-	-	-	-	R		
d Number of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
e Location of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	R		
f Date of meeting		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
g Inverted element		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
h Part of name (not entry or inverted element)		0	-	-	-	-	NR		
x Topical subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
z Chronological subdivision		0	-	-	-	-	R		
2 System code		1	-	-	-	-	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		1	-	-	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		0	-	-	-	-	NR	3	
715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	⎕⎕						NR		
a Entry element		-	1	-	-	-	NR		
x Topical subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	0	-	-	-	R		
2 System code		-	1	-	-	-	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	1	-	-	-	NR	3^v	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	0	-	-	-	NR	3	
750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT	⎕⎕						NR		
a Topical subject		-	-	1	-	-	NR		
x Topical subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
z Chronological subdivision		-	-	0	-	-	R		
2 System code		-	-	1	-	-	NR	10^v	sgce
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	1	-	-	NR	3	eng
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	0	-	-	NR	3	
780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS	⎕⎕						NR		
a Entry element		-	-	-	1	-	NR		
x Topical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		
y Geographical subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		

Field/Subfield	Ind.	CBR	GNR	TNR	FSR	GER	Rep.	Len.	Def.
z Chronological subdivision		-	-	-	0	-	R		
2 System code		-	-	-	1	-	NR	10^v	
8 Language of cataloguing		-	-	-	1	-	NR	3	
9 Language of the base access point		-	-	-	0	-	NR	3	
830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE	⊔⊔						R		
a Note text		0	0	0	0	0	R		
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	4⊔						R		
a Host name		0	0	0	0	-	R		
b Access number		0	0	0	0	-	R		
c Compression information		0	0	0	0	-	R		
d Path		0	0	0	0	-	R		
e Date and hour of consultation and access		0	0	0	0	-	NR	12^v	
f Electronic name		0	0	0	0	-	R		
g Uniform Resource Name		0	0	0	0	-	R		
h Processor of request		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
i Instruction		0	0	0	0	-	R		
j Bits per second		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
k Password		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
l Logon/login		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
m Contact for access assistance		0	0	0	0	-	R		
n Name of location of host in subfield a		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
o Operating system		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
p Port		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
q Electronic format type		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
r Settings		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
s File size		0	0	0	0	-	R		
t Terminal emulation		0	0	0	0	-	R		
u Uniform Resource Locator		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
v Hours access method available		0	0	0	0	-	R		
x Nonpublic note		0	0	0	0	-	R		
y Access method		0	0	0	0	-	NR		
w Record control number		0	0	0	0	-	R		
z Public note		0	0	0	0	-	R		
950 UNLINKED RELATED ACCESS POINT*	⊔⊔						R		
a Access point		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
2 System code		0	0	0	0	0	NR	10^v	
3 Record number		0	0	0	0	0	NR	15^v	
5 Relationship control		0	0	0	0	0	NR	4^v	
991 EDITOR'S NOTES*	⊔⊔						R		
a Note		0	0	0	0	0	NR		
b Note author		0	0	0	0	0	NR	30^v	
c Note date		0	0	0	0	0	NR	8^v	
992 FIELD FOR LOCAL NEEDS*	⊔⊔						NR		
b Record marks		0	0	0	0	0	NR		

B CODE LIST FOR GEOGRAPHIC AREAS

B.1 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF NAMES

A

Abu Dhabi (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

>   USE   Abaū Ẓaby (United Arab Emirates: Emirate)

Abyssinia

>   USE   Ethiopia

Abū Ẓaby (United Arab Emirates: Emirate)

>   Assigned code:

>   **[a-ts]**   United Arab Emirates

>   UF   Abu Dhabi (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

A.C.T.

>   USE   Australian Capital Territory

Açores

>   USE   Azores

Adamawa (Emirate)

>   Assigned codes:

>   **[f-cm]**   Cameroon

>   **[f-nr]**   Nigeria

Aden

>   Assigned code:

>   **[a-ye]**   Yemen (Republic)

Aden (Protectorate)

>   Assigned code:

>   **[a-ye]**   Yemen (Republic)

Aden, Gulf of

>   Assigned code:

>   **[mr]**   Red Sea

>   UF   Gulf of Aden

Admiralty Islands (Papua New Guinea)

>   Assigned code:

>   **[a-pp]**   Papua New Guinea

Adriatic Sea

Assigned code:

[mm]   Mediterranean Sea

Advanced countries

USE   Developed countries

Aegean Islands (Greece and Turkey)

Assigned codes:

[e-gr]   Greece

[a-tu]   Turkey

UF

Islands of the Aegean

Aegean Sea

Assigned codes:

[e-gr]   Greece

[a-tu]   Turkey

Afars and Issas, French Territory of the

USE   Djibouti

Afghanistan [a-af]

Africa [f]

Africa, Central [fc]

UF   Central Africa

Africa, East

Assigned code:

[fe]   Africa, Eastern

UF   British East Africa

East Africa

Africa, Eastern [fe]

UF   Eastern Africa

Africa, Equatorial

USE   Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

Africa, French-speaking Equatorial [fq]

UF   Africa, Equatorial

French Equatorial Africa

French-speaking Equatorial Africa

Africa, French-speaking West

Assigned code:

[fw]   Africa, West

UF   French-speaking West Africa

French West Africa

Africa, Italian East

USE   Africa, Northeast

Africa, North [ff]

UF   North Africa

Africa, Northeast [fh]

UF   Africa, Italian East

East African Horn

Italian East Africa

Northeast Africa

Africa, Northwest

Assigned codes:

[ff]   Africa, North

[fw]   Africa, West

UF

Northwest Africa

Africa, South

USE   South Africa

Africa, Southern [fs]

UF   Southern Africa

Africa, Southwest

USE   Namibia

Africa, Sub-Saharan [fb]

UF   Sub-Saharan Africa

Africa, West [fw]

UF   British West Africa

West Africa

Alabama [n-us-al]

Alaska [n-us-ak]

Alaska, Gulf of (Alaska)

Assigned code:

]   ] North Pacific Ocean

UF   Gulf of Alaska (Alaska)

[pn

] North Pacific Ocean

UF

Gulf of Alaska (Alaska)

Albania [e-aa]

UF   People's Socialist Republic of Albania

Alberta [n-cn-ab]

Alderney (Channel Islands)

[Coded [e-uk-ui] (Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

Assigned code:

[e-gg]   Guernsey

Algeria [f-ae]

UF   People's Democratic Republic of Algeria

Alps [ea]

Amazon River [sa]

America

Assigned codes:

[n]   North America

[s]   South America

America, Central

USE   Central America

American Samoa [poas]

UF   Samoa, American

Amur River (China and Russia) [aa]

UF   Hei Ho (China and Russia)

Heilong Jiang (China and Russia)

Reka Amur (China and Russia)

Sakhalin Ula (China and Russia)

Andaman and Nicobar Islands (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii]   India

Andean Area

USE   Andes

Andes [sn]

UF   Andean Area

Andorra [e-an]

Anglo-Egyptian Sudan

USE   Sudan

Angola [f-ao]

> UF   People's Republic of Angola
>
> Portuguese West Africa
>
> West Africa, Portuguese

Anguilla [nwxa]

[Coded [nwxi] (Saint Kitts and Nevis) before Mar. 1988]

Anhui Sheng (China) [a-cc-an]

> UF   Anhwei Province (China)

Anhwei Province (China)

> USE   Anhui Sheng (China)

Antarctic Ocean [t]

Antarctic regions

> USE   Antarctica

Antarctica [t]

[Coded also [t-ay] (Antarctica) before Mar. 1988]

> UF

Antarctic regions

> South Pole

Antigua

> Assigned code:
>
> **[nwaq]**   Antigua and Barbuda

Antigua and Barbuda [nwaq]

Antilles, Greater

> USE   West Indies

Antilles, Lesser [nwla]

> UF   Lesser Antilles

Appalachian Mountains [n-usa]

Appalachian Mountains, Southern

> Assigned code:
>
> **[n-usa]**   Appalachian Mountains

Appalachian Region

> Assigned code:
>
> **[n-usa]**   Appalachian Mountains

Aqaba, Gulf of

> Assigned code:
>
> **[mr]**   Red Sea

UF   Gulf of Aqaba

Arab Republic of Yemen

USE   Yemen (Republic)

Arab countries [ma]

UF   Arabic countries

Arabia

USE   Arabian Peninsula

Arabia, Southern

Assigned codes:

[a-mk]   Oman

[a-ye]   Yemen (Republic)

Arabian Peninsula [ar]

UF   Arabia

Arabian Sea [au]

Arabic countries

USE   Arab countries

Arafura Sea

Assigned code:

[ps]   South Pacific Ocean

Aran Islands (Ireland)

Assigned code:

[e-ie]   Ireland

Archipel des Marquises (French Polynesia)

USE   Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Arctic Ocean [r]

Arctic regions [r]

UF   North Pole

Argentina [s-ag]

Arizona [n-us-az]

Arkansas [n-us-ar]

Armenia

Assigned code:

[a-ai]   Armenia (Republic)

Armenia

Assigned code:

[a-ir]   Iran

Armenia

      Assigned code:

            [a-tu]   Turkey

Armenia (Republic) [a-ai]

[Coded [e-ur-ai] (Armenia (Republic)) before June 1998]

            UF

Armenian S.S.R.

Armenian S.S.R.

            USE   Armenia (Republic)

Aruba [nwaw]

[Coded [nwco] (Curaçao) before Sept. 2002]

Ascension Island (Atlantic Ocean) [lsai]

Ashanti

            USE   Ghana

Ashmore and Cartier Islands [u-ac]

Asia [a]

Asia Minor

            USE   Turkey

Asia and Europe (treated collectively)

            USE   Eurasia

Asia, Central [ac]

            UF   Central Asia

                Soviet Central Asia

Asia, East

            USE   East Asia

Asia, South

            USE   South Asia

Asia, Southeastern

             USE   Southeast Asia

Asia, Southwestern

            USE   Middle East

Asia, Western

            USE   Middle East

Atlantic Coast (U.S.)

      Assigned code:

            [n-us]   United States

Atlantic Ocean [l]

Atlantic States

>   Assigned code:

>> **[n-us]**   United States

Atlantic States, South

>   USE   South Atlantic States

Atlas Mountains [fa]

Austral Islands (French Polynesia)

>   Assigned code:

>> **[pofp]**   French Polynesia

>   UF   Tubuai Islands (French Polynesia)

Australasia [u]

Australia [u-at]

Australia, Central

>   USE   Central Australia

Australia, Eastern

>   USE   Eastern Australia

Australia, Northern

>   USE   Northern Australia

Australia, Western

>   USE   Western Australia

Australian Capital Territory [u-at-ac]

[Coded [u-at-ne] (New South Wales) before Sept. 2002]

>   UF

A.C.T.

Federal Capital Territory

Austria [e-au]

Azad Jammu and Kashmir

>   USE   Azad Kashmir

Azad Kashmir

>   Assigned code:

>> **[a-pk]**   Pakistan

>   UF   Azad Jammu and Kashmir

Kashmir

Azerbaijan [a-aj]

[Coded [e-ur-aj] (Azerbaijan) before June 1998]

UF

Azerbaijan S.S.R.

Azerbaijan S.S.R.

USE   Azerbaijan

Azores [lnaz]

UF   Açores

B

Babylonia

Assigned code:

[a-iq]   Iraq

Bahamas [nwbf]

Bahrain [a-ba]

UF   Bahrein

Bahrein

USE   Bahrain

Balearic Islands (Spain)

Assigned code:

[e-sp]   Spain

Balkan Peninsula [ed]

UF   Europe, Southeastern

Southeastern Europe

Baltic Sea

Assigned code:

[ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Baltic States [eb]

Banaba (Kiribati)

Assigned code:

[pokb]   Kiribati

UF   Ocean Island (Kiribati)

Bangladesh [a-bg]

UF   East Pakistan (Pakistan)

Banks Islands (Vanuatu)

Assigned code:

[ponn]   Vanuatu

Barbados [nwbb]

Barbuda

Assigned code:

[nwaq] Antigua and Barbuda

Barents Sea

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic Ocean

Basutoland

USE Lesotho

Bay of Bengal

USE Bengal, Bay of

Bay of Fundy

USE Fundy, Bay of

Bear Island (Norway)

Assigned code:

[lnsb] Svalbard (Norway)

UF Bjørnøya (Norway)

Beaufort Sea

Assigned code:

[r] Arctic Ocean

Bechuanaland

USE Botswana

Beijing (China) [a-cc-pe]

UF Peiping (China)

Peking (China)

Belarus [e-bw]

[Coded [e-ur-bw] (Belarus) before June 1998]

UF Belorussian S.S.R.

Byelorussian S.S.R.

White Russia

Belau

USE Palau

Belgian Congo

USE Congo (Democratic Republic)

Belgium [e-be]

Belize [ncbh]

UF British Honduras

Belorussian S.S.R.

USE   Belarus

Benelux countries [el]

UF   Low countries

Bengal, Bay of [ab]

UF   Bay of Bengal

Benin [f-dm]

UF   Dahomey

People's Republic of Benin

Bering Sea

Assigned code:

[pn]   North Pacific Ocean

Berlin (Germany)

Assigned code:

[e-gx]   Germany

UF   East Berlin

West Berlin

Bermuda Islands [lnbm]

Bermuda Triangle

Assigned code:

[ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Bhutan [a-bt]

Biafra

USE   Nigeria

Bikini Atoll (Marshall Islands)

Assigned code:

[poxe]   Marshall Islands

Bioco (Equatorial Guinea)

USE   Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Bioko (Equatorial Guinea)

USE   Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Bismarck Archipelago (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Bjørnøya (Norway)

USE   Bear Island (Norway)

Black Sea [mb]

Blue Ridge Mountains

      Assigned code:

         [n-usa]   Appalachian Mountains

Bo Hai (China) [a-ccp]

         UF   Bohai (China : Gulf)

                 Chihli, Gulf of (China)

                 Po Gulf (China)

                 Po Hai (China)

Bohai (China : Gulf)

         USE   Bo Hai (China)

Bolivia [s-bo]

Bonaire [nwbn]

[Coded [nwco]

(Curaçao) before Sept. 2002]

         UF   Bonaire (Netherlands Antilles)

Bonaire (Netherlands Antilles)

         USE   Bonaire

Bophuthatswana (South Africa)

      Assigned code:

         [f-sa]   South Africa

Borneo [a-bn]

Bosnia and Hercegovina

         USE   Bosnia and Herzegovina

Bosnia and Herzegovina [e-bn]

[Coded [e-yu]

(Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

         UF   Bosnia and Hercegovina

Botswana [f-bs]

         UF   Bechuanaland

Bougainville Island (Papua New Guinea)

      Assigned code:

         [a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Bouvet Island [lsbv]

Brazil [s-bl]

Brazzaville

         USE   Congo (Brazzaville)

British Columbia [n-cn-bc]

British Commonwealth countries

        USE   Commonwealth countries

British Dominions

        USE   Commonwealth countries

British East Africa

        USE   Africa, East

British Guiana

        USE   Guyana

British Honduras

        USE   Belize

British Indian Ocean Territory [i-bi]

        UF   Chagos Islands

               Indian Ocean Territory, British

British Isles

      Assigned codes:

        [e-uk]   Great Britain

        [e-ie]   Ireland

British North Borneo

        USE   Sabah

British Solomon Islands

        USE   Solomon Islands

British Somaliland

        USE   Somalia

British Togoland

        USE   Togoland (British)

British Virgin Islands [nwvb]

        UF   Virgin Islands

               Virgin Islands, British

               Virgin Islands (Great Britain)

               Virgin Islands (Presidency)

British West Africa

        USE   Africa, West

Brownsea Island (England)

      Assigned code:

        [e-uk-en]   England

Brunei [a-bx]

Bulgaria [e-bu]

        UF   People's Republic of Bulgaria

Burkina Faso [f-uv]

        UF   Upper Volta

Burma [a-br]

        UF   Myanmar

Burundi [f-bd]

        UF   German East Africa

Byelorussian S.S.R.

        USE   Belarus

Byzantine Empire

      Assigned code:

        [mm]   Mediterranean Region

C

Cabo Verde [lncv]

        UF   Cape Verde

                  Republic of Cabo Verde

                  Republic of Cape Verde

Caicos Islands

        USE   Turks and Caicos Islands

Calf of Man (Isle of Man)

[Coded [e-uk-ui](Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

California [n-us-ca]

Cambodia [a-cb]

        UF   Kampuchea

Khmer Republic

Cameroon [f-cm]

        UF   Cameroons, French

                  Cameroons, Southern

                  Cameroun

                  French Cameroons

                  Southern Cameroons

Cameroons, French

        USE   Cameroon

Cameroons, Southern

> USE   Cameroon

Cameroun

> USE   Cameroon

Canada [n-cn]

Canada, Eastern

> Assigned code:
>
>> **[n-cn]**   Canada
>
> UF   Eastern Canada

Canada, Northern

> Assigned code:
>
>> **[n-cn]**   Canada
>
> UF   Northern Canada

Canada, Western

> Assigned code:
>
>> **[n-cn-bc]**   British Columbia

[n-cnp]

> UF

Western Canada

Canadian Northwest

> USE   Northwest, Canadian

Canal Zone [nccz]

> UF   Panama Canal Zone

Canary Islands [lnca]

Canton and Enderbury Islands

> Assigned code:
>
>> **[pokb]**   Kiribati
>
> UF   Enderbury and Canton Islands

Cape Verde

> USE   Cabo Verde

Caribbean Area [cc]

> UF   Caribbean Sea Region
>
>> Circumcaribbean

Caribbean Island Dependencies of the United States

> USE   United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands

Caribbean Netherlands

> Assigned codes:

       [nwbn]   Bonaire

       [nweu]   Sint Eustatius

       [nwsd]   Saba

Caribbean Sea [cc]

Caribbean Sea Region

       USE   Caribbean Area

Caroline Islands [poci]

Carpathian Mountains

    Assigned code:

       [ee]   Europe, Eastern

Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

    Assigned code:

       [u-at-no]   Northern Territory

       UF   Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

    Assigned code:

       [u-at-qn]   Queensland

       UF   Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

Caspian Sea [ak]

Caucasus [e-urk]

Caucasus, Northern (Russia) [e-urr]

       UF   North Caucasus (Russia)

Northern Caucasus (Russia)

Cayman Islands [nwcj]

Celebes (Indonesia)

    Assigned code:

       [a-io]   Indonesia

       UF   Sulawesi (Indonesia)

Central Africa

       USE   Africa, Central

Central African Empire

       USE   Central African Republic

Central African Republic [f-cx]

       UF   Central African Empire

Ubangi Shari

Central America [nc]

UF   America, Central

Middle America

Central Asia

USE   Asia, Central

Central Australia [u-atc]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

UF

Australia, Central

Central Black Earth Region (Russia)

USE   Central Chernozem Region (Russia)

Central Black Soil Region (Russia)

USE   Central Chernozem Region (Russia)

Central Chernozem Region (Russia) [e-urc]

UF   Central Black Earth Region (Russia)

Central Black Soil Region (Russia)

Central Europe

USE   Europe, Central

Ceuta (Spain)

Assigned code:

[f-sh]   Spanish North Africa

Ceylon

USE   Sri Lanka

Ch'ung-ch'ing shih (China)

USE   Chongqing (China)

Chad [f-cd]

Chad, Lake

Assigned code:

[fq]   Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

Chagos Islands

USE   British Indian Ocean Territory

Chang Chiang (China)

USE   Yangtze River (China)

Channel Islands

[Coded [e-uk-ui] (Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

Chekiang Province (China)

USE   Zhejiang Sheng (China)

Chesapeake Bay (Md. and Va.)

      Assigned codes:

          [n-us-md]   Maryland

          [n-us-va]   Virginia

Chihli, Gulf of (China)

        USE   Bo Hai (China)

Chile [s-cl]

China [a-cc]

        UF   Mainland China

             People's Republic of China

Chishima-retto (Russia)

        USE   Russia (Federation)

Chongqing (China) [a-cc-cq]

[Coded [a-cc-sz] (Szechuan Province (China)) before Sept. 2000]

        UF

Ch'ung-ch'ing shih (China)

Chungking (China)

Christmas Island (Indian Ocean) [i-xa]

Christmas Island (Pacific Ocean)

        USE   Kiritimati (Kiribati)

Chungking (China)

        USE   Chongqing (China)

Chuuk (Micronesia)

      Assigned code:

          [pomi]   Micronesia (Federated States)

        UF   Truk (Micronesia)

Circumcaribbean

        USE   Caribbean Area

Cocos (Keeling) Islands [i-xb]

        UF   Keeling Islands

Cold regions [q]

Collectivity of Saint Martin

        USE   Saint-Martin

Colombia [s-ck]

Colorado [n-us-co]

Colorado River (Colo.-Mexico)

Assigned codes:

> **[n-mx]**   Mexico
>
> **[n-usp]**   West (U.S.)

Colorado River Delta (Mexico)

Assigned code:

> **[n-mx]**   Mexico

Commonwealth countries [b]

> UF   British Commonwealth countries
>
>   British Dominions
>
>   Commonwealth nations

Commonwealth nations

> USE   Commonwealth countries

Commonwealth of Independent States countries

> USE   Soviet Union

Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

> USE   Mariana Islands

Communauté françcaise

> USE   French Community

Communist countries

Assigned codes:

> **[ee]**   Europe, Eastern
>
> **[e-ur]**   Soviet Union

Comoro Islands

> USE   Comoros

Comoros [i-cq]

> UF   Comoro Islands
>
>   Îles Comores

Confederate States of America

Assigned code:

> **[n-usu]**   Southern States

Congo (Brazzaville) [f-cf]

> UF   Brazzaville
>
>   French Congo
>
>   Middle Congo

Congo (Democratic Republic) [f-cg]

> UF   Belgian Congo

Congo (Kinshasa)

Congo (Leopoldville)

Zaire

Congo (Kingdom)

      USE   Kongo Kingdom

Congo (Kinshasa)

      USE   Congo (Democratic Republic)

Congo (Leopoldville)

      USE   Congo (Democratic Republic)

Congo River [fg]

Connecticut [n-us-ct]

Cook Islands [pocw]

Coral Sea Islands [u-cs]

Corsica (France)

      Assigned code:

        [e-fr]   France

Costa Rica [nccr]

Côte d'Ivoire [f-iv]

      UF   Ivory Coast

Crete (Greece)

      Assigned code:

        [e-gr]   Greece

Croatia [e-ci]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]]

      UF   People's Republic of Croatia

Cuba [nwcu]

Cumberland Mountains

      Assigned code:

        [n-usu]   Southern States

Curaçao [nwco]

      UF   Curaçao (Netherlands Antilles)

Curaçao (Netherlands Antilles)

      USE   Curaçao

Cyprus [a-cy]

Czech Republic [e-xr]

[Coded [e-cs] (Czechoslovakia) before May 1993]

UF   Czech Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

Czech Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

USE   Czech Republic

Czechoslovakia [e-cs]

[Includes the Czech Republic and Slovakia treated collectively]

D

D'Entrecasteaux Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Dahomey

USE   Benin

Danube River [eo]

Deep space [zd]

Delaware [n-us-de]

Democratic German Republic

USE   Germany (East)

Denmark [e-dk]

Desolation Islands

USE   Kerguelen Islands

Developed countries [dd]

UF   Advanced countries

Economically advanced countries

First World

Industrialized countries

Developing countries [d]

UF   Emerging nations

Third World

Underdeveloped areas

Diego Garcia (British Indian Ocean Territory)

Assigned code:

[i-bi]   British Indian Ocean Territory

District of Columbia

USE   Washington (D.C.)

Djibouti [f-ft]

UF   Afars and Issas, French Territory of the

French Somaliland

> French Territory of the Afars and Issas
>
> Somaliland, French

Dodekanesos (Greece)

Assigned code:

[e-gr]   Greece

Dominica [nwdq]

Dominican Republic [nwdr]

Dubai

USE   Dubayy (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

Dubayy (United Arab Emirates : Emirate)

Assigned code:

[a-ts]   United Arab Emirates

UF

Dubai

Dutch East Indies

USE   Indonesia

Dutch Guiana

USE   Suriname

Dutch West Indies

USE   Netherlands Antilles

Dza-chu

USE   Mekong River

E

Earth [x]

East

USE   Orient

East (Far East)

USE   East Asia

East (Near East)

USE   Middle East

East (U.S.) [n-usr]

East Africa

USE   Africa, East

East Africa Protectorate

USE   Kenya

East Africa, Portuguese German East Africa

            USE   Mozambique

East African Horn

            USE   Africa, Northeast

East Asia [ae]

            UF   Asia, East

                     East (Far East)

                     Far East

East Berlin

            USE   Berlin (Germany)

East China Sea [an]

East Germany

            USE   Germany (East)

East Indies

      Assigned code:

            ]   Southeast Asia

            UF   Indies, East

[as]

Southeast Asia

            UF

Indies, East

East Indies

      Assigned code:

            [az] South Asia

            UF   Indies, East

East Pakistan (Pakistan)

            USE   Bangladesh

East Siberian Region (Russia)

            USE   Siberia, Eastern (Russia)

East Timor

            USE   Timor-Leste

Easter Island [poea]

            UF   Isla de Pascua

                     Pascua Island

Eastern Africa

            USE   Africa, Eastern

Eastern Australia [u-ate]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

       UF

Australia, Eastern

Eastern Canada

       USE   Canada, Eastern

Eastern Europe

       USE   Europe, Eastern

Eastern Hemisphere [xa]

Eastern Mediterranean

       USE   Middle East

Eastern Samar (Philippines)

    Assigned code:

       [a-ph]   Philippines

Eastern Siberia (Russia)

       USE   Siberia, Eastern (Russia)

Economically advanced countries

       USE   Developed countries

Ecuador [s-ec]

Egypt [f-ua]

Eire

       USE   Ireland

El Salvador [nces]

       UF   Salvador

Ellice Islands

       USE   Tuvalu

Emerging nations

       USE   Developing countries

Enderbury and Canton Islands

       USE   Canton and Enderbury Islands

England [e-uk-en]

English Channel

    Assigned code:

       [ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Equator

    Assigned code:

       [w]   Tropics

Equatorial Guinea [f-eg]

> UF   Guinea, Equatorial
>
> > Guinea, Spanish
> >
> > R¡o Muni
> >
> > Spanish Guinea

Eritrea [f-ea]

[Coded [f-et] (Ethiopia) before Nov. 1993]

Estonia [e-er]

[Coded [e-ur-er] (Estonia) before June 1998]

Eswatini [f-sq---]

> UF   Swaziland

Ethiopia [f-et]

> UF   Abyssinia

Eurasia [me]

> UF   Asia and Europe (treated collectively)
>
> > Europe and Asia (treated collectively)

Europe [e]

Europe and Asia (treated collectively)

> USE   Eurasia

Europe, Central [ec]

> UF   Central Europe
>
> > Europe, East Central

Europe, East Central

> USE   Europe, Central

Europe, Eastern [ee]

> UF   Eastern Europe

Europe, East Central

Europe, Northern [en]

> UF   Northern Europe

Europe, Southeastern

> USE   Balkan Peninsula

Europe, Southern [es]

> UF   Southern Europe

Europe, Western [ew]

> UF   Western Europe

European Economic Community countries

Assigned code:

[e]   Europe

European Union countries

Assigned code:

[e]   Europe

F

Faeroe Islands

USE   Faroe Islands

Falkland Islands [lsfk]

UF   Malvinas Islands

Far East

USE   East Asia

Far East (Russia)

USE   Russian Far East (Russia)

Far Eastern Region (Russia)

USE   Russian Far East (Russia)

Far West (U.S.)

USE   West (U.S.)

Faroe Islands [lnfa]

UF   Faeroe Islands

Federal Capital Territory

USE   Australian Capital Territory

Federal German Republic

USE   Germany (West)

Federated States of Micronesia

USE   Micronesia (Federated States)

Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland

USE   Rhodesia and Nyasaland

Federation of South Arabia

Assigned code:

]   Yemen (Republic)

UF   South Arabia, Federation of

[a-ye]

Yemen (Republic)

UF

South Arabia, Federation of

Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

> Assigned code:

>> **[f-eg]**   Equatorial Guinea

>> UF   Bioco (Equatorial Guinea)

>>> Bioko (Equatorial Guinea)

>>> Macias Nguema (Equatorial Guinea)

Fiji [pofj]

Finland [e-fi]

First World

> USE   Developed countries

Florida [n-us-fl]

Former Netherlands Antilles

> USE   Netherlands Antilles

Former Soviet republics

> USE   Soviet Union

Former Yugoslav republics

> USE   Yugoslavia

Formosa

> USE   Taiwan

France [e-fr]

French Cameroons

> USE   Cameroon

French Community [h]

> UF   Communauté française

>> French Union

French Congo

> USE   Congo (Brazzaville)

French Equatorial Africa

> USE   Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

French Guiana [s-fg]

> UF   Guiana, French

French Guinea

> USE   Guinea

French India

> Assigned code:

>> **]**   India

UF   India, French

[a-ii]

India

UF

India, French

French Indochina

USE   Indochina

French Morocco

USE   Morocco

French Polynesia [pofp]

UF   Oceania, French

Polynesia, French

French Somaliland

USE   Djibouti

French Southern and Antarctic Lands

USE   Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

French Southern Indian Ocean Islands

USE   Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

French Sudan

USE   Mali

French Territory of the Afars and Issas

USE   Djibouti

French Togoland

USE   Togo

French Union

USE   French Community

French West Africa

USE   Africa, French-speaking West

French West Indies

USE   West Indies, French

French-speaking Equatorial Africa

USE   Africa, French-speaking Equatorial

French-speaking West Africa

USE   Africa, French-speaking West

Friendly Islands

USE   Tonga

Froides, Îles

        USE   Prince Edward Islands

Frostbelt (U.S.)

        USE   Snowbelt States

Fujian Sheng (China) [a-cc-fu]

        UF   Fukien Province (China)

Fukien Province (China)

        USE   Fujian Sheng (China)

Fundy, Bay of

    Assigned code:

        [ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

        UF   Bay of Fundy

Futuna Islands (Wallis and Futuna Islands)

    Assigned code:

        [powf]   Wallis and Futuna Islands

G

Gabon [f-go]

Galapagos Islands [pogg]

Gambia [f-gm]

Gambier Islands (French Polynesia)

    Assigned code:

        [pofp]   French Polynesia

Gansu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ka]

        UF   Kansu Province (China)

Gaza Strip [awgz]

Georges Bank

    Assigned code:

        [ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Georgia [n-us-ga]

Georgia (Republic) [a-gs]

[Coded [e-ur-gs] (Georgia (Republic)) before June 1998]

        UF   Georgia (Soviet Union)

             Georgian S.S.R.

Georgia (Soviet Union)

        USE   Georgia (Republic)

Georgian S.S.R.

USE   Georgia (Republic)

German Democratic Republic

USE   Germany (East)

German East Africa

USE   Burundi

German Federal Republic

USE   Germany (West)

Germany [e-gx]

[For Germany as a whole regardless of time period; includes Germany (East) and Germany (West) as a whole between 1949 and 1990]

Germany (East) [e-ge]

[For the eastern part of Germany before 1949 or after 1990 and for the German Democratic Republic between 1949-1990]

UF   Democratic German Republic

East Germany

German Democratic Republic

Germany, Eastern

Germany (West) [e-gw]

[For the western part of Germany before 1949 or after 1990 and for the Federal Republic of Germany between 1949-1990]

UF   Federal German Republic

German Federal Republic

Germany, Western

West Germany

Germany, Eastern

USE   Germany (East)

Germany, Northern

Assigned code:

[e-gx]   Germany

UF   Northern Germany

Germany, Southern

Assigned code:

[e-gx]   Germany

UF   Southern Germany

Germany, Western

USE   Germany (West)

Ghana [f-gh]

UF   Ashanti

Gold Coast

Ghana (Empire)

Assigned code:

[fw]   Africa, West

Gibraltar [e-gi]

Gibraltar, Strait of

Assigned codes:

[e-gi]   Gibraltar

[mm]   Mediterranean Sea

UF

Strait of Gibraltar

Gilbert Islands

USE   Kiribati

Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony

Assigned codes:

[pokb]   Kiribati

[potv]   Tuvalu

Gold Coast

USE   Ghana

Great Barrier Reef (Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-qn]   Queensland

Great Basin

Assigned code:

[n-usp]   West (U.S.)

Great Britain [e-uk]

UF   United Kingdom

Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

[Coded [e-uk-ui]

(Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

See codes:

[e-gg]

[e-im]

[e-je]

UF

Island Dependencies of Great Britain

United Kingdom Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Great Lakes (North America) [nl]

Great Lakes States

        USE   Lake States

Great Plains [np]

Great Rift Valley [fr]

        UF   Rift Valley

Greater Antilles

        USE   West Indies

Greece [e-gr]

Greenland [n-gl]

Grenada [nwgd]

Grenadines (Saint Vincent and the Grenadines and Grenada)

      Assigned codes:

          [nwgd]   Grenada

          [nwxm]   Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

Guadalcanal (Solomon Islands)

      Assigned code:

          [pobp]   Solomon Islands

Guadeloupe [nwgp]

Guam [pogu]

Guangdong Sheng (China) [a-cc-kn]

        UF   Kwangtung Province (China)

Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-kc]

        UF   Kuang-hsi Chuang tsu tzu chih ch'ü (China)

Kwangsi Chuang Autonomous Region

Guatemala [ncgt]

Guernsey (Channel Islands)

        USE   Guernsey

Guernsey [e-gg]

[Coded [e-uk-ui] (Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

        UF   Alderney (Channel Islands)

                   Channel Islands

                   Guernsey (Channel Islands)

Guiana, British

USE   Guyana

Guiana, Dutch

USE   Suriname

Guiana, French

USE   French Guiana

Guinea [f-gv]

UF   French Guinea

Guinea, French

Guinée

République de Guinée

Guinea, Equatorial

USE   Equatorial Guinea

Guinea, French

USE   Guinea

Guinea, Gulf of

Assigned code:

[ls]   South Atlantic Ocean

UF   Gulf of Guinea

Guinea, Portuguese

USE   Guinea-Bissau

Guinea, Spanish

USE   Equatorial Guinea

Guinea-Bissau [f-pg]

UF   Guinea, Portuguese

Portuguese Guinea

Guinée

USE   Guinea

Guizhou Sheng (China) [a-cc-kw]

UF   Kweichow Province (China)

Gulf States

Assigned code:

[n-usu]   Southern States

Gulf of Aden

USE   Aden, Gulf of

Gulf of Alaska (Alaska)

USE   Alaska, Gulf of (Alaska)

Gulf of Aqaba

      USE   Aqaba, Gulf of

Gulf of Carpentaria (N.T. and Qld.)

      USE   Carpentaria, Gulf of (N.T. and Qld.)

Gulf of Guinea

      USE   Guinea, Gulf of

Gulf of Mexico

      USE   Mexico, Gulf of

Gulf of Oman

      USE   Oman, Gulf of

Gulf of Thailand

      USE   Thailand, Gulf of

Guyana [s-gy]

      UF   British Guiana

              Guiana, British

H

Hainan Island (China)

      USE   Hainan Sheng (China)

Hainan Province (China)

      USE   Hainan Sheng (China)

Hainan Sheng (China) [a-cc-ha]

[Coded [a-cc-kn] (Kwangtung Province (China)) before June 1998]

      UF

Hainan Island (China)

Hainan Province (China)

Haiti [nwht]

Hawaii [n-us-hi]

Heard Island (Heard and McDonald Islands)

    Assigned code:

      ]   Heard and McDonald Islands

[i-hm]

Heard and McDonald Islands

Heard and McDonald Islands [i-hm]

Hebei Sheng (China) [a-cc-hp]

      UF   Ho-pei sheng (China)

             Hopeh Province (China)

Hei Ho (China and Russia)

> USE   Amur River (China and Russia)

Heilong Jiang (China and Russia)

> USE   Amur River (China and Russia)

Heilongjiang Sheng (China) [a-cc-he]

> UF   Heilungkiang Province (China)

Heilungkiang Province (China)

> USE   Heilongjiang Sheng (China)

Henan Sheng (China) [a-cc-ho]

> UF   Honan Province (China)

Himalaya Mountains [ah]

Hispaniola [nwhi]

Ho-pei sheng (China)

> USE   Hebei Sheng (China)

Hoang Ho (China)

> USE   Yellow River (China)

Holland

> USE   Netherlands

Holy Roman Empire

> Assigned code:

> **[e]**   Europe

Holy See

> USE   Vatican City

Homelands (South Africa)

> Assigned code:

> **[f-sa]**   South Africa

Honan Province (China)

> USE   Henan Sheng (China)

Honduras [ncho]

Hong Kong

> USE   Hong Kong (China)

Hong Kong (China) [a-cc-hk]

[Coded [a-hk] (Hong Kong) before June 1998]

> UF   Hong Kong

>   Hong Kong (China : Special Administrative Region)

Hong Kong (China : Special Administrative Region)

USE   Hong Kong (China)

Hopeh Province (China)

USE   Hebei Sheng (China)

Hoàng Sa

USE   Paracel Islands

Hsi Chiang (China)

USE   Xi River (China)

Hsi-sha Islands

USE   Paracel Islands

Hsin-chiang-wei-wy-erh tzu chin chü (China)

USE   Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China)

Hu-pei (China)

USE   Hubei Sheng (China)

Huang Hai

USE   Yellow Sea

Huang Ho (China)

USE   Yellow River (China)

Hubei Sheng (China) [a-cc-hh]

UF   Hu-pei (China)

Hupeh Province (China)

Hudson Bay [n-cnh]

Hunan Province (China)

USE   Hunan Sheng (China)

Hunan Sheng (China) [a-cc-hu]

UF   Hunan Province (China)

Hungary [e-hu]

Hupeh Province (China)

USE   Hubei Sheng (China)

Huthera (Tanzania)

USE   Pemba Island (Tanzania)

Hwang Ho (China)

USE   Yellow River (China)

I

Àkutskaíà A.S.S.R. (Russia)

USE   Sakha (Russia)

Iberian Peninsula

Assigned codes:

[e-po]   Portugal

[e-sp]   Spain

Iceland [e-ic]

Idaho [n-us-id]

Ifni

Assigned code:

[f-mr]   Morocco

Îles Comores

USE   Comoros

Îles Froides

USE   Prince Edward Islands

Îles Kerguélen

USE   Kerguelen Islands

Îles Marquises de Mendoça (French Polynesia)

USE   Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon

USE   Saint Pierre and Miquelon

Illinois [n-us-il]

India [a-ii]

India, French

USE   French India

Indian Ocean [i]

Indian Ocean Islands, French

USE   Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

Indian Ocean Territory, British

USE   British Indian Ocean Territory

Indian Territory

Assigned code:

[n-us-ok]   Oklahoma

Indiana [n-us-in]

Indies, East

USE   East Indies

Indies, East

USE   East Indies

Indies, West

USE   West Indies

Indochina [ai]

UF   French Indochina

Indonesia [a-io]

UF   Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

Dutch East Indies

Netherlands East Indies

Industrialized countries

USE   Developed countries

Inner Mongolia (China) [a-cc-im]

UF   Mongolia (Inner Mongolia)

Intercontinental areas (Eastern Hemisphere) [m]

Intercontinental areas (Western Hemisphere) [c]

Iowa [n-us-ia]

Iran [a-ir]

UF   Persia

Iraq [a-iq]

Ireland [e-ie]

UF   Eire

Ireland (Eire)

Irish Republic

Republic of Ireland

Ireland (Eire)

USE   Ireland

Ireland, Northern

USE   Northern Ireland

Irian Barat (Indonesia)

USE   Papua (Indonesia)

Irian Jaya (Indonesia)

USE   Papua (Indonesia)

Irish Republic

USE   Ireland

Irish Sea

Assigned code:

[ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Isla de Pascua

USE   Easter Island

Islamic Empire

Assigned codes:

[ff]   Africa, North

[aw]   Middle East

[e-sp]   Spain

Islamic countries

Assigned codes:

[f]   Africa

[a]   Asia

Island Dependencies of Great Britain

USE   Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Caribbean

USE   United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Pacific

USE   United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

Islands of the Aegean

USE   Aegean Islands (Greece and Turkey)

Islands of the Atlantic

Assigned code:

[l]   Atlantic Ocean

Islands of the Indian Ocean

Assigned code:

[i]   Indian Ocean

Islands of the Mediterranean

Assigned code:

[mm]   Mediterranean Sea

Islands of the South China Sea

Assigned code:

[ao]   South China Sea

Islas Marquesas de Mendoza (French Polynesia)

USE   Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Isle of Man [e-im]

[Coded [e-uk-ui] (Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

UF   Calf of Man (Isle of Man)

Man, Isle of

Isle of Wight (England)

    Assigned code:

        [e-uk-en]   England

        UF   Wight, Isle of

Israel [a-is]

Italian East Africa

        USE   Africa, Northeast

Italian Somaliland

        USE   Somalia

Italy [e-it]

Ivory Coast

        USE   Côte d'Ivoire

J

Jamaica [nwjm]

Jammu and Kashmir (India)

    Assigned code:

        ]   India

        UF   Kashmir

[a-ii]

India

        UF

Kashmir

Kashmir and Jammu (India)

Jan Mayen Island [lnjn]

Japan [a-ja]

        UF   Ryukyu Islands, Southern

Java (Indonesia)

    Assigned code:

        [a-io]   Indonesia

Jersey (Channel Islands)

        USE   Jersey

Jersey [e-je]

[Coded [e-uk-ui] (Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies) before April 2018]

        UF   Channel Islands

              Jersey (Channel Islands)

Jerusalem

Assigned codes:

[a-is]   Israel

[awba]   West Bank

Jiangsu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ku]

UF   Kiangsu Province (China)

Jiangxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-ki]

UF   Kiangsi Province (China)

Jilin Sheng (China) [a-cc-kr]

UF   Kirin Province (China)

Johnston Island [poji]

Jordan [a-jo]

UF   Transjordan

Judaea and Samaria

USE   West Bank

Jupiter (Planet) [zju]

K

Kalimantan Barat (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io]   Indonesia

Kampuchea

USE   Cambodia

Kansas [n-us-ks]

Kansu Province (China)

USE   Gansu Sheng (China) [a-cc-ka]

Kashmir

USE   Azad Kashmir

Kashmir and Jammu (India)

USE   Jammu and Kashmir (India)

Kazakh S.S.R.

USE   Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan [a-kz]

[Coded [e-ur-kz] (Kazakhstan) before June 1998]

UF   Kazakh S.S.R.

Kazakstan

Kazakstan

USE   Kazakhstan

Keeling Islands

        USE   Cocos (Keeling) Islands

Kentucky [n-us-ky]

Kenya [f-ke]

        UF   East Africa Protectorate

Kerguelen Islands

      Assigned code:

        [i-fs]   Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

        UF   Desolation Islands

Îles Kerguélen

Kermadec Islands [poki]

Khmer Republic

        USE   Cambodia

Kiangsi Province (China)

        USE   Jiangxi Sheng (China)

Kiangsu Province (China)

        USE   Jiangsu Sheng (China)

Kievan Rus

      Assigned codes:

        [e-bw]   Belarus

        [e-ru]   Russia (Federation)

        [e-un]   Ukraine

Kirghiz S.S.R.

        USE   Kyrgyzstan

Kiribati [pokb]

[Coded [pogn] (Gilbert and Ellice Islands) or [poln] (Line Islands) before Mar. 1988]

        UF   Gilbert Islands

Kirin Province (China)

        USE   Jilin Sheng (China)

Kiritimati (Kiribati)

      Assigned code:

        [pokb]   Kiribati

        UF   Christmas Island (Pacific Ocean)

Kongo Kingdom

      Assigned codes:

        [f-ao]   Angola

       [f-cf]   Congo (Brazzaville)

       [f-cg]   Congo (Democratic Republic)

       UF   Congo (Kingdom)

Korea [a-kr]

Korea (North) [a-kn]

       UF   Korean People's Republic

             North Korea

Korea (Republic)

       USE   Korea (South)

Korea (South) [a-ko]

       UF   Korea (Republic)

             South Korea

Korean People's Republic

       USE   Korea (North)

Kosovo [e-kv]

[Coded [e-rb] (Serbia) before May 2008 and [e-yu] (Serbia and Montenegro) before April 2007]

Kosrae (Micronesia)

    Assigned code:

       [pomi]   Micronesia (Federated States)

       UF   Kusaie (Micronesia)

Kuang-hsi Chuang tsu tzu chih ch'ü (China)

       USE   Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China)

Kunlun Mountains (China and India) [a-cck]

       UF   Kwenlun Mountains

Kuril Islands (Russia) [e-ru]

[Coded [e-ur-ru] (Russia Federation) before June 1998]

       UF   Chishima-retto (Russia)

             Kurile Islands (Russia)

             Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

             R.S.F.S.R.

             Russian Republic

             Russian S.F.S.R.

             Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

       USE   Russia (Federation)

Kurile Islands (Russia)

USE   Russia (Federation)

Kusaie (Micronesia)

USE   Kosrae (Micronesia)

Kuwait [a-ku]

Kwang Sea

USE   Yellow Sea

Kwangsi Chuang Autonomous Region

USE   Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China)

Kwangtung Province (China)

USE   Guangdong Sheng (China)

Kweichow Province (China)

USE   Guizhou Sheng (China)

Kwenlun Mountains

USE   Kunlun Mountains (China and India)

Kyrgyzstan [a-kg]

[Coded [e-ur-kg] (Kyrgystan) before June 1998]

UF   Kirghiz S.S.R.

L

La Plata River (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE   Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Labrador (N.L.)

Assigned code:

[n-cn-nf]   Newfoundland and Labrador

Laccadive, Minicoy, and Amindivi Islands (India)

USE   Lakshadweep (India)

Lake States [nl]

UF   Great Lakes States

Lakshadweep (India)

Assigned code:

[a-ii]   India

UF   Laccadive, Minicoy, and Amindivi Islands (India)

Lan-ts'ang Chiang

USE   Mekong River

Lancang Jiang

USE   Mekong River

Laos [a-ls]

Lapland

    Assigned codes:

        [e-fi]   Finland

        [e-no]   Norway

        [e-sw]   Sweden

Latin America [cl]

    UF   Neotropics

Latin Orient

    Assigned code:

        [aw]   Middle East

Latvia [e-lv]

[Coded [e-ur-lv] (Latvia) before June 1998]

Lebanon [a-le]

Leeward Islands (West Indies) [nwli]

Lesotho [f-lo]

    UF   Basutoland

Lesser Antilles

    USE   Antilles, Lesser

Lesser Sunda Islands (Indonesia and East Timor)

    Assigned codes:

        [a-em]   Timor-Leste

        [a-io]   Indonesia

    UF   Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

Levant

    USE   Middle East

Liaoning Province (China)

    USE   Liaoning Sheng (China)

Liaoning Sheng (China) [a-cc-lp]

    UF   Liaoning Province (China)

Liberia [f-lb]

Libya [f-ly]

Liechtenstein [e-lh]

Line Islands [poln]

Lithuania [e-li]

[Coded [e-ur-li] (Lithuania) before March 1998]

Long River (China)

USE   Yangtze River (China)

Louisiade Archipelago (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Louisiana [n-us-la]

Low countries

USE   Benelux countries

Loyalty Islands (New Caledonia)

Assigned code:

[ponl]   New Caledonia

Luxembourg [e-lu]

Luzon (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph]   Philippines

M

Macao

USE   Macau (China : Special Administrative Region)

Macau (China : Special Administrative Region) [a-cc-mh]

[Coded [a-mh] (Macao) before May 29, 2000]

UF   Macao

Macedonia

Assigned codes:

[e-bu]   Bulgaria

[e-gr]   Greece

[e-xn]   North Macedonia

Macedonia (Bulgaria)

Assigned code:

[e-bu]   Bulgaria

Macedonia (Greece)

Assigned code:

[e-gr]   Greece

Macedonia (Republic)

USE   North Macedonia

Macias Nguema (Equatorial Guinea)

USE   Fernando Po (Equatorial Guinea)

Madagascar [f-mg]

UF   Malagasy Republic

Madeira Islands [lnma]

Madura Island (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io]   Indonesia

Maine [n-us-me]

Mainland China

USE   China

Malagasy Republic

USE   Madagascar

Malawi [f-mw]

UF   Nyasaland

Malay Archipelago

Assigned code:

[as]   Southeast Asia

Malay Peninsula

Assigned codes:

[a-th]   Thailand

[am]   Malaya

Malaya [am]

Malaysia [a-my]

Maldives [i-xc]

Mali [f-ml]

UF   French Sudan

Sudan, French

Mali (Empire)

Assigned code:

[fw]   Africa, West

Malta [e-mm]

Maluku (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io]   Indonesia

UF   Moluccas (Indonesia)

Malvinas Islands

USE   Falkland Islands

Man, Isle of

USE   Isle of Man

Manchuria (China)

Assigned code:

[a-cc]   China

Manitoba [n-cn-mb]

Mariana Islands [poxd]

UF   Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands

Northern Mariana Islands

Marie-Galante (Guadeloupe)

Assigned code:

[nwgp]   Guadeloupe

Maritime Provinces [n-cnm]

Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp]   French Polynesia

UF   Archipel des Marquises (French Polynesia)

Îles Marquises de Mendoça (French Polynesia)

Islas Marquesas de Mendoza (French Polynesia)

Mendaña (French Polynesia)

Mars (Planet) [zma]

UF   Red Planet

Marshall Islands [poxe]

Martinique [nwmq]

Maryland [n-us-md]

Massachusetts [n-us-ma]

Mauritania [f-mu]

Mauritius [i-mf]

Mayotte [i-my]

[Coded [i-cq] (Comoros) before Mar. 1988]

McDonald Island (Heard and McDonald Islands)

Assigned code:

[i-hm]   Heard and McDonald Islands

Mediterranean Region [mm]

Mediterranean Region, Eastern

USE   Middle East

Mediterranean Sea [mm]

Mekong River [ag]

        UF   Dza-chu

               Lan-ts'ang Chiang

               Lancang Jiang

               Song Tíên Giang

Melanesia [pome]

Melilla (Spain)

    Assigned code:

        [f-sh]   Spanish North Africa

Mendaña (French Polynesia)

        USE   Marquesas Islands (French Polynesia)

Mercury (Planet) [zme]

Mexico [n-mx]

        UF   Middle America

Mexico, Gulf of [nm]

        UF   Gulf of Mexico

Michigan [n-us-mi]

Micronesia [pott]

Micronesia (Federated States) [pomi]

[Coded [pott] (Micronesia) before Mar. 1988]

        UF   Federated States of Micronesia

Middle America

        USE   Central America

Middle Atlantic States [n-usl]

        UF   Middle States

Middle Congo

        USE   Congo (Brazzaville)

Middle East [aw]

        UF   Asia, Southwestern

               Asia, Western

               East (Near East)

               Eastern Mediterranean

               Levant

               Mediterranean Region, Eastern

               Mideast

               Near East

Middle States

        USE   Middle Atlantic States

Middle West [n-usc]

        UF   Midwest

               North Central States

Mideast

        USE   Middle East

Midway Islands [poxf]

Midwest

        USE   Middle West

Mindanao Island (Philippines)

      Assigned code:

        [a-ph]   Philippines

Minnesota [n-us-mn]

Miquelon

      Assigned code:

        [n-xl]   Saint Pierre and Miquelon

Mississippi [n-us-ms]

Mississippi River [n-usm]

Missouri [n-us-mo]

Missouri River [n-uss]

Moldavia

      Assigned codes:

        [e-mv]   Moldova

        [e-rm]   Romania

Moldavian S.S.R.

        USE   Moldova

Moldova [e-mv]

[Coded [e-ur-mv] (Moldova) before June 1998]

        UF   Moldavian S.S.R.

Moluccas (Indonesia)

        USE   Maluku (Indonesia)

Monaco [e-mc]

Mongolia [a-mp]

        UF   Mongolian People's Republic

               Outer Mongolia

Mongolia (Inner Mongolia)

    USE Inner Mongolia (China)

Mongolian People's Republic

    USE Mongolia

Montana [n-us-mt]

Montenegro [e-mo]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before April 2007]

Montserrat [nwmj]

Moon [zmo]

Morocco [f-mr]

    UF French Morocco

Mozambique [f-mz]

    UF East Africa, Portuguese German East Africa

People's Republic of Mozambique

Portuguese East Africa

Muscat and Oman

    USE Oman

Myanmar

    USE Burma

N

Namibia [f-sx]

    UF Africa, Southwest

South-West Africa

Nansha Islands

    USE Spratly Islands

Nauru [ponu]

    UF Pleasant Island

Near East

    USE Middle East

Nebraska [n-us-nb]

Negros Island (Philippines)

  Assigned code:

    [a-ph] Philippines

Neotropics

    USE Latin America

Nepal [a-np]

Neptune (Planet) [zne]

Netherlands [e-ne]

        UF   Holland

Netherlands Antilles

[Coded [nwna] (Netherlands Antilles) before Dec. 2011]

       Assigned codes:

           [nwaw]   Aruba

           [nwbn]   Bonaire

           [nwco]   Curaçao

           [nweu]   Sint Eustatius

           [nwsd]   Saba

           [nwsn]   Sint Maarten

           UF   Dutch West Indies

Former Netherlands Antilles

Netherlands West Indies

West Indies, Dutch

Netherlands East Indies

        USE   Indonesia

Netherlands West Indies

        USE   Netherlands Antilles

Nevada [n-us-nv]

Nevis

       Assigned code:

           [nwxi]   Saint Kitts and Nevis

New Britain Island (Papua New Guinea)

       Assigned code:

           [a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

New Brunswick [n-cn-nk]

New Caledonia [ponl]

New England [n-usn]

New France

       Assigned code:

           [n]   North America

New Guinea [a-nw]

        UF   New Guinea Island

New Guinea (Territory)

Assigned code:

> **[a-pp]**   Papua New Guinea

New Guinea Island

> USE   New Guinea

New Hampshire [n-us-nh]

New Hebrides

> USE   Vanuatu

New Ireland Island (Papua New Guinea)

> Assigned code:

> **[a-pp]**   Papua New Guinea

New Jersey [n-us-nj]

New Mexico [n-us-nm]

New South Wales [u-at-ne]

New York (State) [n-us-ny]

New Zealand [u-nz]

Newfoundland and Labrador [n-cn-nf]

Nicaragua [ncnq]

Niger [f-ng]

Niger River [fi]

Nigeria [f-nr]

> UF   Biafra

Nile River [fl]

Ninghsia Province (China)

> USE   Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China)

Ningsia Hui Autonomous Region (China)

> USE   Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China)

Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-nn]

> UF   Ninghsia Province (China)

Ningsia Hui Autonomous Region (China)

Niue [poxh]

Non-Black Earth Region (Russia)

> USE   Non-Chernozem Region (Russia)

Non-Chernozem Region (Russia)

> Assigned code:

> **[e-ru]**   Russia (Federation)

> UF   Non-Black Earth Region (Russia)

Norfolk Island

> Assigned code:

>> **[u-at]**   Australia

North Africa

> USE   Africa, North

North America [n]

North Atlantic Ocean [ln]

North Borneo

> USE   Sabah

North Carolina [n-us-nc]

North Caucasus (Russia)

> USE   Caucasus, Northern (Russia)

North Central States

> USE   Middle West

North Dakota [n-us-nd]

North Korea

> USE   Korea (North)

North Macedonia [e-xn---]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

> UF   Macedonia (Republic)

North Pacific Ocean [pn]

> UF   Pacific Ocean, North

North Pole

> USE   Arctic regions

North Sea

> Assigned code:

>> **[ln]**   North Atlantic Ocean

North Vietnam

> USE   Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

Northeast (U.S.)

> USE   Northeastern States

Northeast Africa

> USE   Africa, Northeast

Northeast Passage

> Assigned code:

>> **[r]**   Arctic regions

Northeastern States [n-use]

        UF   Northeast (U.S.)

Northern Australia [u-atn]

[Coded [u-at] (Australia) before September 2005]

        UF   Australia, Northern

Northern Canada

        USE   Canada, Northern

Northern Caucasus (Russia)

        USE   Caucasus, Northern (Russia)

Northern Europe

        USE   Europe, Northern

Northern Germany

        USE   Germany, Northern

Northern Hemisphere [xb]

Northern Ireland [e-uk-ni]

        UF   Ireland, Northern

Northern Mariana Islands

        USE   Mariana Islands

Northern Rhodesia

        USE   Zambia

Northern Russia

        USE   Russia, Northern

Northern Samar (Philippines)

      Assigned code:

        [a-ph]   Philippines

Northern Soviet Union

        USE   Russia, Northern

Northern Territory [u-at-no]

Northwest (U.S.)

        USE   Northwest, Pacific

Northwest, Canadian

      Assigned code:

        [n-cn]   Canada

        UF   Canadian Northwest

West (Canada)

Northwest, Old

Assigned code:

> **[n-usc]**   Middle West

Northwest, Pacific

Assigned code:

> **[n-cn-bc]**   British Columbia

> UF   Northwest (U.S.)

Pacific Northwest

Northwest, Pacific

Assigned code:

> **[n-usp]**   West (U.S.)

> UF

Northwest (U.S.)

Pacific Northwest

Northwest Africa

> USE   Africa, Northwest

Northwest Passage

Assigned code:

> **[r]**   Arctic regions

Northwest Territories [n-cn-nt]

Northwestern Soviet Union

> USE   Soviet Union, Northwestern

Northwestern States

Assigned code:

> **[n-usp]**   West (U.S.)

Norway [e-no]

Norwegian Sea

Assigned code:

> **[ln]**   North Atlantic Ocean

Nova Scotia [n-cn-ns]

Nunavut [n-cn-nu]

Nyasaland

> USE   Malawi

O

Ocean Island (Kiribati)

> USE   Banaba (Kiribati)

Oceania [po]

UF   Oceanica

Oceania, French

USE   French Polynesia

Oceanica

USE   Oceania

Ohio [n-us-oh]

Ohio River [n-uso]

Okinawa Island (Japan)

Assigned code:

]   Japan

[a-ja]

Japan

Oklahoma [n-us-ok]

Oman [a-mk]

UF   Muscat and Oman

Oman, Gulf of

Assigned code:

]   Arabian Sea

UF   Gulf of Oman

[au]

Arabian Sea

UF

Gulf of Oman

Ontario [n-cn-on]

Oregon [n-us-or]

Orient

Assigned code:

]   Asia

UF   East

[a]

Asia

UF

East

Orkney (Scotland)

Assigned code:

[e-uk-st]   Scotland

Outer Mongolia

>   USE   Mongolia

Outer space [zo]

>   UF   Space, Outer

Ozark Mountains

>   Assigned codes:

>>   **[n-us-ar]**   Arkansas

>>   **[n-us-mo]**   Missouri

>>   **[n-us-ok]**   Oklahoma

P

Pacific and Mountain States

>   USE   West (U.S.)

Pacific Area

>   Assigned code:

>>   **[p]**   Pacific Ocean

Pacific Coast (North America)

>   Assigned code:

>>   **[n]**   North America

Pacific Island Dependencies of the United States

>   USE   United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

Pacific Islands (Ter.)

>   USE   Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

>   Assigned code:

>>   **[poup]**   United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands

>   UF   Pacific Islands (Ter.)

Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

Pacific Northwest

>   USE   Northwest, Pacific

Pacific Ocean [p]

Pacific Ocean, North

>   USE   North Pacific Ocean

Pacific Ocean, South

>   USE   South Pacific Ocean

Pacific States

>   Assigned codes:

[n-us-ca]   California

[n-us-or]   Oregon

[n-us-wa]   Washington (State)

Pakistan [a-pk]

UF   West Pakistan

Palau [popl]

[Coded [poci] (Caroline Islands) before Mar. 1988]

UF   Belau

Pelew

Republic of Palau

Palestine

Assigned codes:

[a-is]   Israel

[awba]   West Bank

[awgz]   Gaza Strip

Panama [ncpn]

Panama Canal Zone

USE   Canal Zone

Panay Island (Philippines)

Assigned code:

[a-ph]   Philippines

Pannonia

Assigned codes:

[e-au]   Austria

[e-hu]   Hungary

[e-yu]   Yugoslavia

Papua

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Papua (Indonesia)

Assigned code:

[a-io]   Indonesia

UF   Irian Barat (Indonesia)

Irian Jaya (Indonesia)

West Irian

West New Guinea

Papua New Guinea [a-pp]

Paracel Islands [aopf]

UF   Hoàng Sa

Hsi-sha Islands

Xisha Islands

Paraguay [s-py]

Pascua Island

USE   Easter Island

Peiping (China)

USE   Beijing (China)

Peking (China)

USE   Beijing (China)

Pelew

USE   Palau

Pemba Island (Tanzania)

Assigned code:

]   Tanzania

UF   Huthera (Tanzania)

[f-tz]

Tanzania

UF

Huthera (Tanzania)

Pennsylvania [n-us-pa]

People's Democratic Republic of Algeria

USE   Algeria

People's Democratic Republic of Yemen

USE   Yemen (Republic)

People's Republic of Angola

USE   Angola

People's Republic of Benin

USE   Benin

People's Republic of Bulgaria

USE   Bulgaria

People's Republic of China

USE   China

People's Republic of Croatia

USE   Croatia

People's Republic of Mozambique

USE   Mozambique

People's Socialist Republic of Albania

USE   Albania

Persia

USE   Iran

Persian Gulf [ap]

Persian Gulf States

Assigned code:

]   Arabian Peninsula

[ar]

Arabian Peninsula

Peru [s-pe]

Pescadores Islands

Assigned code:

[a-ch]   Taiwan

Philippine Islands

USE   Philippines

Philippine Sea

Assigned code:

[pn]   North Pacific Ocean

Philippines [a-ph]

UF   Philippine Islands

Phoenix Islands (Kiribati)

Assigned code:

]   Kiribati

[pokb]

Kiribati

Pirineos

USE   Pyrenees

Pitcairn Island [popc]

Plata, Rio de la (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE   Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plate River (Argentina and Uruguay)

USE   Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)

Pleasant Island

        USE   Nauru

Pluto (Planet) [zpl]

Po Gulf (China)

        USE   Bo Hai (China)

Po Hai (China)

        USE   Bo Hai (China)

Pohnpei (Micronesia)

     Assigned code:

        ]   Micronesia (Federated States)

        UF   Ponape (Micronesia)

[pomi]

Micronesia (Federated States)

        UF

Ponape (Micronesia)

Poland [e-pl]

Polar regions

     Assigned codes:

        [t]   Antarctica

        [r]   Arctic Regions

Polynesia [pops]

Polynesia, French

        USE   French Polynesia

Ponape (Micronesia)

        USE   Pohnpei (Micronesia)

Portugal [e-po]

Portuguese East Africa

        USE   Mozambique

Portuguese Guinea

        USE   Guinea-Bissau

Portuguese Timor

        USE   Timor-Leste

Portuguese West Africa

        USE   Angola

Prairie Provinces [n-cnp]

Pratas Islands

Assigned code:

> **]**   Taiwan

[a-ch]

Taiwan

Prince Edward Island [n-cn-pi]

Prince Edward Islands

Assigned code:

> **]**   South Africa
>
> UF   Froides, Îles

[f-sa]

South Africa

UF

Froides, Îles

Îles Froides

Prussia (Germany)

Assigned code:

> **[e-gx]**   Germany

Puerto Rico [nwpr]

Pyrenees [ep]

> UF   Pirineos

Q

Qatar [a-qa]

Québec (Province) [n-cn-qu]

Queensland [u-at-qn]

Qinghai Sheng (China) [a-cc-ts]

> UF   Tsinghai Province (China)

R

R.S.F.S.R.

> USE   Russia (Federation)

Red Planet

> USE   Mars (Planet)

Red Sea [mr]

Reka Amur (China and Russia)

> USE   Amur River (China and Russia)

Republic of Cabo Verde

> USE   Cabo Verde

Republic of Cape Verde

        USE   Cabo Verde

Republic of Ireland

        USE   Ireland

Republic of Palau

        USE   Palau

Republic of Vanuatu

        USE   Vanuatu

Republique de Guinée

        USE   Guinea

Réunion [i-re]

Rhine River [er]

Rhode Island [n-us-ri]

Rhodesia

    Assigned codes:

        [f-za]   Zambia

        [f-rh]   Zimbabwe

Rhodesia and Nyasaland

    Assigned codes:

        [f-mw]   Malawi

        [f-za]   Zambia

        [f-rh]   Zimbabwe

        UF   Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland

Rhodesia, Southern

        USE   Zimbabwe

Rift Valley

        USE   Great Rift Valley

Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay) [sp]

        UF   La Plata River (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plata, Rio de la (Argentina and Uruguay)

Plate River (Argentina and Uruguay)

R¡o Muni

        USE   Equatorial Guinea

Rio Zambezi

        USE   Zambezi River

Rocky Mountains [nr]

Roman Empire

        USE   Rome

Romania [e-rm]

        UF   Rumania

Rome

      Assigned codes:

        [ff]   Africa, North

        [e]   Europe

        [aw]   Middle East

        UF   Roman Empire

Ruanda-Urundi

      Assigned codes:

        [f-bd]   Burundi

        [f-rw]   Rwanda

Rumania

        USE   Romania

Russia

      Assigned code:

        [e-ur]   Soviet Union

        UF   Russian Empire

Russia (Federation) [e-ru]

[Coded [e-ur-ru] (Russia (Federation)) before June 1998]

        UF   Chishima-retto (Russia)

Kurile Islands (Russia)

Kuril'skie ostrova (Russia)

R.S.F.S.R.

Russian Republic

Russian S.F.S.R.

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

Russia, Northern

      Assigned code:

        [e-ru]   Russia (Federation)

        UF   Northern Russia

Northern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Northern

Russian Empire

USE   Russia

Russian Far East (Russia) [e-urf]

UF   Far East (Russia)

Far Eastern Region (Russia)

Soviet Far East (Russia)

Russian Republic

USE   Russia (Federation)

Russian S.F.S.R.

USE   Russia (Federation)

Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

USE   Russia (Federation)

Rwanda [f-rw]

UF   German East Africa

Ryukyu Islands

Assigned code:

[a-ja]   Japan

Ryukyu Islands, Southern

USE   Japan

S

Saba [nwsd]

UF   Saba (Netherlands Antilles)

Saba (Netherlands Antilles)

USE   Saba

Sabah

Assigned code:

[a-my]   Malaysia

UF   British North Borneo

North Borneo

Sahara [fd]

UF   Sahara Desert

Sahara Desert

USE   Sahara

Sahel

Assigned code:

]   Africa

[f]

Africa

Saint-Barthélemy [nwsc]

[Coded [nwsb] (Saint-Barthélemy) before Mar. 1988, Coded [nwgp] (Guadeloupe) from 1988 to Dec. 2011]

UF   Saint Bartholomew

Saint Barts

St. Barthélémy

Saint Bartholomew

USE   Saint-Barthélemy

Saint Barts

USE   Saint-Barthélemy

Saint Christopher and Nevis

USE   Saint Kitts and Nevis

Saint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

USE   Sint Eustatius

Saint Helena [lsxj]

UF   St. Helena

Saint Kitts

Assigned code:

]   Saint Kitts and Nevis

[nwxi]

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Saint Kitts and Nevis [nwxi]

UF   Saint Christopher and Nevis

Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

Assigned codes:

[nwxa]   Anguilla

[nwxi]   Saint Kitts and Nevis

UF   St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla

Saint Lawrence River

Assigned codes:

[n-cn]   Canada

[n-us]   United States

Saint Lucia [nwxk]

UF   St. Lucia

Saint-Martin [nwst]

UF   Collectivity of Saint Martin

Saint-Martin (Collectivity)

Saint-Martin (France: Collectivity)

Saint Martin (West Indies)

St. Martin (West Indies)

Saint-Martin (Collectivity)

USE   Saint-Martin

Saint-Martin (France: Collectivity)

USE   Saint-Martin

Saint Martin (West Indies)

USE   Saint-Martin

Saint Pierre and Miquelon [n-xl]

UF   Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon

St. Pierre and Miquelon

Saint Vincent

Assigned code:

]   Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

UF   St. Vincent

[nwxm]

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

UF

St. Vincent

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines [nwxm]

Sakha (Russia)

Assigned code:

]   Russia (Federation)

UF   Àkutskaíà A.S.S.R. (Russia)

[e-ru]

Russia (Federation)

UF

Àkutskaíà A.S.S.R. (Russia)

Yakutia (Russia)

Sakhalin Ula (China and Russia)

USE   Amur River (China and Russia)

Salvador

USE   El Salvador

Salvage Islands (Madeira Islands)

> USE   Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

Salvages (Madeira Islands)

> USE   Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

Samar (Philippines)

> Assigned code:
>
> > **]**   Philippines

[a-ph]

Philippines

Samoa [pows]

> UF   Western Samoa

Samoa (Islands)

> USE   Samoan Islands

Samoa, American

> USE   American Samoa

Samoan Islands [posh]

> UF   Samoa (Islands)

San Marino [e-sm]

Sandwich Islands, South

> USE   South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands

Santa Cruz Islands (Solomon Islands)

> Assigned code:
>
> > **[pobp]**   Solomon Islands

São Thomé e Pr¡ncipe

> USE   Sao Tome and Principe

Sao Tome and Principe [f-sf]

> UF   São Thomé e Pr¡ncipe

Sarawak

> Assigned code:
>
> > **[a-my]**   Malaysia

Sardinia (Italy)

> Assigned code:
>
> > **[e-it]**   Italy

Saskatchewan [n-cn-sn]

Saturn (Planet) [zsa]

Saudi Arabia [a-su]

Scandinavia [ev]

Scotland [e-uk-st]

Selvagens Islands (Madeira Islands)

      Assigned code:

          ]   Madeira Islands

          UF   Salvage Islands (Madeira Islands)

[lnma]

Madeira Islands

          UF

Salvage Islands (Madeira Islands)

Salvages (Madeira Islands)

Senegal [f-sg]

Serbia [e-rb]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before April 2007]

Seychelles [i-se]

Shaanxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-ss]

          UF   Shensi Province (China)

Shan States

      Assigned code:

          ]   Burma

[a-br]

Burma

Shandong Sheng (China) [a-cc-sp]

          UF   Shantung Province (China)

Shanghai (China) [a-cc-sm]

Shansi Province (China)

          USE   Shanxi Sheng (China)

Shantung Province (China)

          USE   Shandong Sheng (China)

Shanxi Sheng (China) [a-cc-sh]

          UF   Shansi Province (China)

Shensi Province (China)

          USE   Shaanxi Sheng (China)

Shetland (Scotland)

      Assigned code:

          [e-uk-st]   Scotland

Shinnan Islands

        USE   Spratly Islands

Si Kiang (China)

        USE   Xi River (China)

Si River (China)

        USE   Xi River (China)

Siam

        USE   Thailand

Siam, Gulf of

        USE   Thailand, Gulf of

Siberia (Russia) [e-urs]

Siberia, Eastern (Russia) [e-ure]

        UF   East Siberian Region (Russia)

Eastern Siberia (Russia)

Siberia, Northeastern (Russia)

      Assigned code:

        [e-urs]   Siberia (Russia)

Siberia, Northwestern (Russia)

      Assigned code:

        [e-urs]   Siberia (Russia)

Siberia, Western (Russia) [e-urw]

        UF   Western Siberia (Russia)

Sichuan Sheng (China) [a-cc-sz]

        UF   Szechwan Province (China)

Sicily (Italy)

      Assigned code:

        ]   Italy

[e-it]

Italy

Sierra Leone [f-sl]

Sikkim (India)

      Assigned code:

        ]   India

[a-ii]

India

Singapore [a-si]

Sinkiang Uighur Autonomous Region (China)

        USE   Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China)

Sint Eustatius [nweu]

        UF   Saint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

St. Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

Statia (Netherlands Antilles)

Sint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

        USE   Sint Eustatius

Sint Maarten [nwsn]

[Coded [nwst] (Saint Martin (West Indies)) before December 2011]

        UF   Sint Maarten (Netherlands Antilles)

Sint Maarten (West Indies)

Sint Maarten (Netherlands Antilles)

        USE   Sint Maarten

Sint Maarten (West Indies)

        USE   Sint Maarten

Skagerrak (Denmark and Norway)

    Assigned code:

        [ln]   North Atlantic Ocean

Slovak Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

        USE   Slovakia

Slovakia [e-xo]

[Coded [e-cs] (Czechoslovakia) before May 1993]

        UF   Slovak Socialist Republic (Czechoslovakia)

Slovenia [e-xv]

[Coded [e-yu] (Yugoslavia) before Oct. 1992]

[n-us]

United States

        UF

Frostbelt (U.S.)

Society Islands (French Polynesia)

    Assigned code:

        [pofp]   French Polynesia

Socotra (Yemen)

    Assigned code:

[a-ye]   Yemen (Republic)

UF   Sokotra (Yemen)

Sokotra (Yemen)

USE   Socotra (Yemen)

Solar system [zs]

Solomon Islands [pobp]

[Coded also [posn] (Solomon Islands) before Mar. 1988]

UF

British Solomon Islands

Somali Republic

USE   Somalia

Somalia [f-so]

UF   British Somaliland

Italian Somaliland

Somali Republic

Somaliland, French

USE   Djibouti

Song Tíên Giang

USE   Mekong River

Songhai Empire

Assigned codes:

[f-ml]   Mali

[f-n]   Niger

[f-nr]   Nigeria

South Africa [f-sa]

UF   Africa, South

Union of South Africa

South America [s]

South Arabia, Federation of

USE   Federation of South Arabia

South Asia [az]

UF   Asia, South

South Atlantic Ocean [ls]

South Atlantic States

Assigned code:

]   Southern States

UF   Atlantic States, South

[n-usu]

Southern States

UF

Atlantic States, South

South Australia [u-at-sa]

South Carolina [n-us-sc]

South China Sea [ao]

South Dakota [n-us-sd]

South Georgia and South Sandwich Islands [lsxs]

[Coded [lsfk] (Falkland Islands) before Oct. 1992]

UF   Sandwich Islands, South

South Sandwich Islands

South Korea

USE   Korea (South)

South Orkney Islands

Assigned code:

[lsfk]   Falkland Islands

South Pacific Ocean [ps]

UF   Pacific Ocean, South

South Pole

USE   Antarctica

South Sandwich Islands

[Coded [lsfk] (Falkland Islands) before Oct. 1992]

South Shetland Islands (Antarctica)

[Coded [lsfk] (Falkland Islands) before Mar. 1998]

[t]

Antarctica

South Sudan [f-sd]

[Coded [f-sj] (Sudan) before Aug. 2011]

UF

Sudan, South

South Vietnam

USE   Vietnam (Republic)

South-West Africa

USE   Namibia

Southeast Asia [as]

> UF   Asia, Southeastern

Southeastern Asia

Southeastern Asia

> USE   Southeast Asia

Southeastern Europe

> USE   Balkan Peninsula

Southern Africa

> USE   Africa, Southern

Southern Cameroons

> USE   Cameroon

Southern Europe

> USE   Europe, Southern

Southern Germany

> USE   Germany, Southern

Southern Hemisphere [xc]

Southern Rhodesia

> USE   Zimbabwe

Southern Soviet Union

> USE   Soviet Union, Southern

Southern States [n-usu]

Southern Yemen

> USE   Yemen (Republic)

Southwest, New [n-ust]

Southwest, Old

> Assigned code:
>
> > **[n-usu]**   Southern States

Southwestern States

> Assigned codes:
>
> > **[n-usu]**   Southern States
> >
> > **[n-ust]**   Southwest, New

Soviet Central Asia

> USE   Asia, Central

Soviet Far East (Russia)

> USE   Russian Far East (Russia)

Soviet Union [e-ur]

UF   Commonwealth of Independent States countries

Former Soviet republics

U.S.S.R.

Soviet Union, Northern

USE   Russia, Northern

Soviet Union, Northwestern [e-urn]

UF   Northwestern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Southern

Assigned code:

]   Soviet Union

UF   Southern Soviet Union

[e-ur]

Soviet Union

UF

Southern Soviet Union

Soviet Union, Western

Assigned code:

]   Soviet Union

UF   Western Soviet Union

[e-ur]

Soviet Union

UF

Western Soviet Union

Space, Outer

USE   Outer space

Spain [e-sp]

Spanish Guinea

USE   Equatorial Guinea

Spanish Main

Assigned code:

]   Caribbean Area

[cc]

Caribbean Area

Spanish North Africa [f-sh]

UF   Spanish Territories in Northern Morocco

Spanish Sahara

USE   Western Sahara

Spanish Territories in Northern Morocco

          USE   Spanish North Africa

Spitsbergen Island (Norway)

      Assigned code:

          ]   Svalbard (Norway)

          UF   West Spitsbergen (Norway)

[lnsb]

Svalbard (Norway)

          UF

West Spitsbergen (Norway)

Spratly Islands [aoxp]

          UF   Nansha Islands

Shinnan Islands

Sri Lanka [a-ce]

          UF   Ceylon

St. Barthélémy

          USE   Saint-Barthélemy

St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla

          USE   Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

St. Christopher-Nevis-Anguilla

          USE   Saint Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla

St. Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)

          USE   Sint Eustatius

St. Helena

          USE   Saint Helena

St. Lucia

          USE   Saint Lucia

St. Martin (West Indies)

          USE   Saint-Martin

St. Pierre and Miquelon

          USE   Saint Pierre and Miquelon

St. Vincent

          USE   Saint Vincent

Statia (Netherlands Antilles)

          USE   Sint Eustatius

Strait of Gibraltar

       USE   Gibraltar, Strait of

Straits Settlements

      Assigned codes:

         [a-my]   Malaysia

         [a-si]   Singapore

Sub-Saharan Africa

       USE   Africa, Sub-Saharan

Sudan [f-sj]

       UF   Anglo-Egyptian Sudan

Sudan (Region) [fn]

Sudan, French

       USE   Mali

Sudan, South

       USE   South Sudan

Suez Canal (Egypt) [fu]

Sulawesi (Indonesia)

       USE   Celebes (Indonesia)

Sumatra (Indonesia)

      Assigned code:

         ]   Indonesia

[a-io]

Indonesia

Sun [zsu]

Sunbelt States

      Assigned codes:

         [n-us-hi]   Hawaii

         [n-usu]   Southern States

         [n-ust]   Southwest, New

Sunda Islands, Lesser (Indonesia and East Timor)

       USE   Lesser Sunda Islands (Indonesia and East Timor)

Surinam

       USE   Suriname

Suriname [s-sr]

       UF   Dutch Guiana

Guiana, Dutch

Surinam

Svalbard (Norway) [lnsb]

Swan Islands (Honduras) [nwsv]

Swaziland

        USE   Eswatini

Sweden [e-sw]

Switzerland [e-sz]

Syria [a-sy]

Szechwan Province (China)

        USE   Sichuan Sheng (China)

T

T.A.A.F.

        USE   Terres australes et antarctiques françaises

Tadzik Soviet Socialist Republic

        USE   Tajikistan

Taiwan [a-ch]

        UF   Formosa

Tajik S.S.R.

        USE   Tajikistan

Tajikistan [a-ta]

[Coded [e-ur-ta] (Tajikistan) before June 1998]

        UF   Tadzik Soviet Socialist Republic

Tajik S.S.R.

Tanganyika

      Assigned code:

        [f-tz]   Tanzania

Tangier (Morocco)

      Assigned code:

        [f-mr]   Morocco

Tanzania [f-tz]

        UF   German East Africa

Tasmania [u-at-tm]

Tennessee [n-us-tn]

Terres australes et antarctiques françaises [i-fs]

        UF   French Southern and Antarctic Lands

French Southern Indian Ocean Islands

Indian Ocean Islands, French

T.A.A.F.

Texas [n-us-tx]

Thailand [a-th]

        UF   Siam

Thailand, Gulf of [af]

        UF   Gulf of Thailand

Siam, Gulf of

Thian Shan

        USE   Tien Shan

Third World

        USE   Developing countries

Tian Shan

        USE   Tien Shan

Tianjin (China) [a-cc-tn]

        UF   Tientsin (China)

Tibesti Mountains

     Assigned code:

        [f-cd]   Chad

Tibesti Mountains

     Assigned codes:

        [f-ly]   Libya

        [f-ng]   Niger

Tibet (China) [a-cc-ti]

        UF   Tibetan Autonomous Region (China)

Tibetan Autonomous Region (China)

        USE   Tibet (China)

Tien Mountains

        USE   Tien Shan

Tien Shan [at]

        UF   Thian Shan

Tian Shan

Tien Mountains

Tientsin (China)

        USE   Tianjin (China)

Timor, East

USE   Timor-Leste

Timor, Portuguese

USE   Timor-Leste

Timor Island

Assigned codes:

[a-em]   Timor-Leste

[a-io]   Indonesia

Timor-Leste [a-em]

[Coded [a-pt] (Portuguese Timor) before April 21, 1980; coded [a-io] (Indonesia) from 1980-Sept. 2002]

UF   East Timor

Lesser Sunda Islands (Indonesia and East Timor)

Portuguese Timor

Timor, East

Timor, Portuguese

Timor Timur

Timor Sea

Assigned code:

[i]   Indian Ocean

Timor Timur

USE   Timor-Leste

Tobago

Assigned code:

[nwtr]   Trinidad and Tobago

Togo [f-tg]

UF   French Togoland

Togoland (French)

Togoland

Assigned codes:

[f-gh]   Ghana

[f-tg]   Togo

Togoland (British)

Assigned code:

[f-gh]   Ghana

UF   British Togoland

Togoland (French)

USE   Togo

Tokelau [potl]

UF   Union Islands

Tonga [poto]

UF   Friendly Islands

Tonga Islands

Tonga Islands

USE   Tonga

Torres Strait Islands (Qld.)

Assigned code:

[u-at-qn]   Queensland

Transcaucasia

Assigned codes:

[a-ai]   Armenia (Republic)

[a-aj]   Azerbaijan

Transcaucasia

Assigned code:

[a-gs]   Georgia (Republic)

Transjordan

USE   Jordan

Trinidad

Assigned code:

[nwtr]   Trinidad and Tobago

Trinidad and Tobago [nwtr]

Tristan da Cunha [lstd]

Trobriand Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Tropics [w]

Trucial States

USE   United Arab Emirates

Truk (Micronesia)

USE   Chuuk (Micronesia)

Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands

USE   Pacific Islands (Trust Territory)

Tsinghai Province (China)

USE   Qinghai Sheng (China)

Tuamotu Archipelago (French Polynesia)

Assigned code:

[pofp]   French Polynesia

Tubuai Islands (French Polynesia)

USE   Austral Islands (French Polynesia)

Tunisia [f-ti]

Turkey [a-tu]

UF   Asia Minor

Turkmen S.S.R.

USE   Turkmenistan

Turkmenistan [a-tk]

[Coded [e-ur-tk] (Turkmenistan) before June 1998]

UF   Turkmen S.S.R.

Turks and Caicos Islands [nwtc]

UF   Caicos Islands

Tuvalu [potv]

[Coded [pogn] (Gilbert and Ellice Islands) before Mar. 1988]

UF   Ellice Islands

U

U.S.S.R.

USE   Soviet Union

Ubangi Shari

USE   Central African Republic

Uganda [f-ug]

Ukraine [e-un]

[Coded [e-ur-un] (Ukraine) before June 1998]

Underdeveloped areas

USE   Developing countries

Union Islands

USE   Tokelau

Union of South Africa

USE   South Africa

United Arab Emirates [a-ts]

UF   Trucial States

United Arab Republic

Assigned codes:

[f-ua]   Egypt

[a-sy]   Syria

United Kingdom

USE   Great Britain

United Kingdom Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

USE   Great Britain Miscellaneous Island Dependencies

United States [n-us]

United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands [nwuc]

UF   Caribbean Island Dependencies of the United States

Island Dependencies of the United States in the Caribbean

United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands [poup]

[Includes American Samoa, Guam, Pacific Islands (Trust Territory) treated collectively]

UF   Island Dependencies of the United States in the Pacific

Pacific Island Dependencies of the United States

Upper Volta

USE   Burkina Faso

Ural Mountains (Russia) [e-uru]

Uranus (Planet) [zur]

Uruguay [s-uy]

Utah [n-us-ut]

Uvea Island (Wallis and Futuna Islands)

Assigned code:

[powf]   Wallis and Futuna Islands

Uzbek S.S.R.

USE   Uzbekistan

Uzbekistan [a-uz]

[Coded [e-ur-uz] (Uzbekistan) before June 1998]

UF   Uzbek S.S.R.

V

Vanuatu [ponn]

UF   New Hebrides

Republic of Vanuatu

Vatican City [e-vc]

UF   Holy See

Venezuela [s-ve]

Venus (Planet) [zve]

Vermont [n-us-vt]

Victoria [u-at-vi]

Vietnam [a-vt]

Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

       Assigned code:

             ]   Vietnam

             UF   North Vietnam

[a-vt]

Vietnam

             UF   North Vietnam

Vietnam, North

Vietnam (Republic)

       Assigned code:

             [a-vt]   Vietnam

             UF   South Vietnam

Vietnam, South

Vietnam, North

             USE   Vietnam (Democratic Republic)

Vietnam, South

             USE   Vietnam (Republic)

Virgin Islands

             USE   British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands (American)

             USE   Virgin Islands of the United States

Virgin Islands (Danish)

             USE   Virgin Islands of the United States

Virgin Islands (Great Britain)

             USE   British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands (Presidency)

             USE   British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands, British

             USE   British Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands of the United States [nwvi]

             UF   Virgin Islands

Virgin Islands (American)

Virgin Islands (Danish)

Virginia [n-us-va]

Volga River (Russia) [e-urp]

Volgo-Viatskii Region (Russia)

      Assigned code:

          ]   Russia (Federation)

[e-ru]

Russia (Federation)

Volta River (Ghana) [fv]

W

Wake Island [powk]

Wales [e-uk-wl]

Wallis and Futuna Islands [powf]

Washington (D.C.) [n-us-dc]

        UF   District of Columbia

Washington (State) [n-us-wa]

Washington Region

      Assigned codes:

          [n-us-md]   Maryland

          [n-us-va]   Virginia

          [n-us-dc]   Washington (D.C.)

West (Canada)

        USE   Northwest, Canadian

West (U.S.) [n-usp]

        UF   Far West (U.S.)

Pacific and Mountain States

Western States (U.S.)

West Africa

        USE   Africa, West

West Africa, Portuguese

        USE   Angola

West Bank [awba]

[Coded [a-is] (Israel) and/or [a-jo] (Jordan) before Mar. 1988]

        UF   Judaea and Samaria

West Bank of the Jordan River

West Bank of the Jordan River

USE   West Bank

West Berlin

USE   Berlin (Germany)

West Germany

USE   Germany (West)

West Indies [nw]

UF   Antilles, Greater

Greater Antilles

Indies, West

West Indies, Dutch

USE   Netherlands Antilles

West Indies, French

Assigned code:

[nwla]   Antilles, Lesser

UFFrench West Indies

West Irian

USE   Papua (Indonesia)

West New Guinea

USE   Papua (Indonesia)

West Pakistan

USE   Pakistan

West River (China)

USE   Xi River (China)

West Spitsbergen (Norway)

USE   Spitsbergen Island (Norway)

West Virginia [n-us-wv]

Western Australia [u-at-we]

UF   Australia, Western

Western Canada

USE   Canada, Western

Western Europe

USE   Europe, Western

Western Hemisphere [xd]

Western Sahara [f-ss]

UF   Spanish Sahara

Western Samoa

USE   Samoa

Western Siberia (Russia)

USE   Siberia, Western (Russia)

Western Soviet Union

USE   Soviet Union, Western

Western States (U.S.)

USE   West (U.S.)

White Russia

USE   Belarus

Wight, Isle of

USE   Isle of Wight (England)

Windward Islands (West Indies) [nwwi]

Wisconsin [n-us-wi]

Woodlark Islands (Papua New Guinea)

Assigned code:

[a-pp]   Papua New Guinea

Wyoming [n-us-wy]

X

Xi River (China) [a-ccs]

UF   Hsi Chiang (China)

Si Kiang (China)

Si River (China)

West River (China)

Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China) [a-cc-su]

UF   Hsin-chiang-wei-wy-erh tzu chin chü (China)

Sinkiang Uighur Autonomous Region (China)

Xisha Islands

USE   Paracel Islands

Y

Yakutia (Russia)

USE   Sakha (Russia)

Yangtze River (China) [a-ccg]

UF   Chang Chiang (China)

Long River (China)

Yap (Micronesia)

Assigned code:

[pomi]   Micronesia (Federated States)

Yellow River (China) [a-ccy]

UF   Hoang Ho (China)

Huang Ho (China)

Hwang Ho (China)

Yellow Sea [ay]

UF   Huang Hai

Kwang Sea

Yemen (Arab Republic)

USE   Yemen (Republic)

Yemen (People's Democratic Republic)

USE   Yemen (Republic)

Yemen (Republic) [a-ye]

UF   Arab Republic of Yemen

People's Democratic Republic of Yemen

Southern Yemen

Yemen (Arab Republic)

Yemen (People's Democratic Republic)

Yugoslavia [e-yu]

UF   Former Yugoslav republics

Yukon Territory [n-cn-yk]

Yunnan Province (China)

USE   Yunnan Sheng (China)

Yunnan Sheng (China) [a-cc-yu]

UF   Yunnan Province (China)

Z

Zaire

USE   Congo (Democratic Republic)

Zambezi River [fz]

UF   Rio Zambezi

Zambia [f-za]

UF   Northern Rhodesia

Zanzibar

Assigned code:

]   Tanzania

[f-tz]

Tanzania

Zhejiang Sheng (China) [a-cc-ch]

        UF   Chekiang Province (China)

Zimbabwe [f-rh]

        UF   Rhodesia, Southern

Southern Rhodesia

Local codes of geographic areas in Slovenia and neighbouring countries

Carinthia (Austria)* [e-au-ko]

Carniola (Slovenia)*

    Assigned codes:

        [e-xv-gr]   Gorenjska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-jv]   Jugovzhodna Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-nk]   Primorsko-notranjska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-os]   Osrednjeslovenska Region (Slovenia)*

Gorenjska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-gr]

Goriška Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-go]

Goriško (Slovenia)*

    Assigned codes:

        [e-xv-go]   Goriška Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-ok]   Obalno-kraška Region (Slovenia)*

Istria County (Croatia)* [e-ci-is]

Jugovzhodna Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-jv]

Karlovac County (Croatia)* [e-ci-ka]

Koroška Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-ko]

Krapina-Zagorje County (Croatia)* [e-ci-kz]

Lower Carniola (Slovenia)*

    Assigned codes:

        [e-xv-jv]   Jugovzhodna Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-os]   Osrednjeslovenska Region (Slovenia)*

Međimurje County (Croatia)* [e-ci-me]

Notranjska (Slovenia)*

    Assigned code:

        [e-xv-nk]   Primorsko-notranjska Region (Slovenia)*

Obalno-kraška Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-ok]

Osrednjeslovenska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-os]

Podravska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-pd]

Pomurska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-po]

Posavska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-sp]

Prekmurje (Slovenia)*

    Assigned code:

        [e-xv-po]   Pomurska Region (Slovenia)*

Primorje (Slovenia)*

    Assigned code:

        [e-xv-ok]   Obalno-kraška Region (Slovenia)*

Primorje-Gorski Kotar County (Croatia)* [e-ci-pg]

Primorska (Slovenia)*

    Assigned codes:

        [e-xv-go]   Goriška Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-nk]   Primorsko-notranjska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-ok]   Obalno-kraška Region (Slovenia)*

Primorsko-notranjska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-nk]

Province of Gorizia (Italy)* [e-it-go]

Province of Trieste (Italy)* [e-it-ts]

Province of Udine (Italy)* [e-it-ud]

Savinjska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-sa]

Slovene Istria*

    Assigned code:

        [e-xv-ok]   Obalno-kraška Region (Slovenia)*

Styria (Austria)* [e-au-st]

Styria (Slovenia)*

    Assigned codes:

        [e-xv-pd]   Podravska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-po]   Pomurska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-sa]   Savinjska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-sp]   Posavska Region (Slovenia)*

        [e-xv-za]   Zasavska Region (Slovenia)*

Varaždin County (Croatia)* [e-ci-va]

Vas County (Hungary)* [e-hu-va]

White Carniola (Slovenia)*

    Assigned code:

        [e-xv-jv]   Jugovzhodna Region (Slovenia)*

Zagreb County (Croatia)* [e-ci-zg]

Zala County (Hungary)* [e-hu-za]

Zasavska Region (Slovenia)* [e-xv-za]

B CODE LIST FOR GEOGRAPHIC AREAS

B.2 ALPHABETICAL CODE LIST

a------	*Asia*
a-af---	*Afghanistan*
a-ai---	*Armenia (Republic)*
a-aj---	*Azerbaijan*
a-ba---	*Bahrain*
a-bg---	*Bangladesh*
a-bn---	*Borneo*
a-br---	*Burma*
a-bt---	*Bhutan*
a-bx---	*Brunei*
a-cb---	*Cambodia*
a-cc---	*China*
a-cc-an	*Anhui Sheng (China)*
a-cc-ch	*Zhejiang Sheng (China)*
a-cc-cq	*Chongqing (China)*
a-cc-fu	*Fujian Sheng (China)*
a-cc-ha	*Hainan Sheng (China)*
a-cc-he	*Heilongjiang Sheng (China)*
a-cc-hh	*Hubei Sheng (China)*
a-cc-hk	*Hong Kong (China : Special Administrative Region)*
a-cc-ho	*Henan Sheng (China)*
a-cc-hp	*Hebei Sheng (China)*
a-cc-hu	*Hunan Sheng (China)*
a-cc-im	*Inner Mongolia (China)*
a-cc-ka	*Gansu Sheng (China)*
a-cc-kc	*Guangxi Zhuangzu Zizhiqu (China)*
a-cc-ki	*Jiangxi Sheng (China)*
a-cc-kn	*Guangdong Sheng (China)*
a-cc-kr	*Jilin Sheng (China)*
a-cc-ku	*Jiangsu Sheng (China)*
a-cc-kw	*Guizhou Sheng (China)*
a-cc-lp	*Liaoning Sheng (China)*
a-cc-mh	*Macao (China : Special Administrative Region)*
a-cc-nn	*Ningxia Huizu Zizhiqu (China)*
a-cc-pe	*Beijing (China)*
a-cc-sh	*Shanxi Sheng (China)*
a-cc-sm	*Shanghai (China)*
a-cc-sp	*Shandong Sheng (China)*
a-cc-ss	*Shaanxi Sheng (China)*
a-cc-su	*Xinjiang Uygur Zizhiqu (China)*
a-cc-sz	*Sichuan Sheng (China)*
a-cc-ti	*Tibet (China)*
a-cc-tn	*Tianjin (China)*

a-cc-ts	*Qinghai Sheng (China)*
a-cc-yu	*Yunnan Sheng (China)*
a-ccg--	*Yangtze River (China)*
a-cck--	*Kunlun Mountains (China and India)*
a-ccp--	*Bo Hai (China)*
a-ccs--	*Xi River (China)*
a-ccy--	*Yellow River (China)*
a-ce---	*Sri Lanka*
a-ch---	*Taiwan*
a-cy---	*Cyprus*
a-em---	*East Timor*
a-gs---	*Georgia (Republic)*
a-ii---	*India*
a-io---	*Indonesia*
a-iq---	*Iraq*
a-ir---	*Iran*
a-is---	*Israel*
a-ja---	*Japan*
a-jo---	*Jordan*
a-kg---	*Kyrgyzstan*
a-kn---	*Korea (North)*
a-ko---	*Korea (South)*
a-kr---	*Korea*
a-ku---	*Kuwait*
a-kz---	*Kazakhstan*
a-le---	*Lebanon*
a-ls---	*Laos*
a-mk---	*Oman*
a-mp---	*Mongolia*
a-my---	*Malaysia*
a-np---	*Nepal*
a-nw---	*New Guinea*
a-ph---	*Philippines*
a-pk---	*Pakistan*
a-pp---	*Papua New Guinea*
a-qa---	*Qatar*
a-si---	*Singapore*
a-su---	*Saudi Arabia*
a-sy---	*Syria*
a-ta---	*Tajikistan*
a-th---	*Thailand*
a-tk---	*Turkmenistan*
a-ts---	*United Arab Emirates*
a-tu---	*Turkey*
a-uz---	*Uzbekistan*
a-vt---	*Vietnam*
a-ye---	*Yemen*
aa-----	*Amur River (China and Russia)*
ab-----	*Bengal, Bay of*
ac-----	*Asia, Central*

ae-----	*East Asia*
af-----	*Thailand, Gulf of*
ag-----	*Mekong River*
ah-----	*Himalaya Mountains*
ai-----	*Indochina*
ak-----	*Caspian Sea*
am-----	*Malaya*
an-----	*East China Sea*
ao-----	*South China Sea*
aopf---	*Paracel Islands*
aoxp---	*Spratly Islands*
ap-----	*Persian Gulf*
ar-----	*Arabian Peninsula*
as-----	*Southeast Asia*
at-----	*Tien Shan*
au-----	*Arabian Sea*
aw-----	*Middle East*
awba---	*West Bank*
awgz---	*Gaza Strip*
ay-----	*Yellow Sea*
az-----	*South Asia*
b------	*Commonwealth countries*
c------	*Intercontinental areas (Western Hemisphere)*
cc-----	*Caribbean Area; Caribbean Sea*
cl-----	*Latin America*
d------	*Developing countries*
dd-----	*Developed countries*
e------	*Europe*
e-aa---	*Albania*
e-an---	*Andorra*
e-au---	*Austria*
e-be---	*Belgium*
e-bn---	*Bosnia and Hercegovina*
e-bu---	*Bulgaria*
e-bw---	*Belarus*
e-ci---	*Croatia*
e-cs---	*Czechoslovakia*
e-dk---	*Denmark*
e-er---	*Estonia*
e-fi---	*Finland*
e-fr---	*France*
e-ge---	*Germany (East)*
e-gg---	*Guernsey*
e-gi---	*Gibraltar*
e-gr---	*Greece*
e-gw---	*Germany (West)*
e-gx---	*Germany*
e-hu---	*Hungary*
e-ic---	*Iceland*
e-ie---	*Ireland*

e-im---	Isle of Man
e-it---	Italy
e-je---	Jersey
e-kv---	Kosovo
e-lh---	Liechtenstein
e-li---	Lithuania
e-lu---	Luxembourg
e-lv---	Latvia
e-mc---	Monaco
e-mm---	Malta
e-mo---	Montenegro
e-mv---	Moldova
e-ne---	Netherlands
e-no---	Norway
e-pl---	Poland
e-po---	Portugal
e-rb---	Serbia
e-rm---	Romania
e-ru---	Russia (Federation)
e-sm---	San Marino
e-sp---	Spain
e-sw---	Sweden
e-sz---	Switzerland
e-uk---	Great Britain
e-uk-en	England
e-uk-ni	Northern Ireland
e-uk-st	Scotland
e-uk-wl	Wales
e-un---	Ukraine
e-ur---	Russia. Russian Empire. Soviet Union. Former Soviet republics
e-urc--	Central Chernozem Region (Russia)
e-ure--	Siberia, Eastern (Russia)
e-urf--	Russian Far East (Russia)
e-urk--	Caucasus
e-urn--	Soviet Union, Northwestern
e-urp--	Volga River (Russia)
e-urr--	Caucasus, Northern (Russia)
e-urs--	Siberia (Russia)
e-uru--	Ural Mountains (Russia)
e-urw--	Siberia, Western (Russia)
e-vc---	Vatican City
e-xn---	North Macedonia
e-xo---	Slovakia
e-xr---	Czech Republic
e-xv---	Slovenia
e-yu---	Yugoslavia
ea-----	Alps
eb-----	Baltic States
ec-----	Europe, Central
ed-----	Balkan Peninsula

ee-----	*Europe, Eastern*
el-----	*Benelux countries*
en-----	*Europe, Northern*
eo-----	*Danube River*
ep-----	*Pyrenees*
er-----	*Rhine River*
es-----	*Europe, Southern*
ev-----	*Scandinavia*
ew-----	*Europe, Western*
f------	*Africa*
f-ae---	*Algeria*
f-ao---	*Angola*
f-bd---	*Burundi*
f-bs---	*Botswana*
f-cd---	*Chad*
f-cf---	*Congo (Brazzaville)*
f-cg---	*Congo (Democratic Republic)*
f-cm---	*Cameroon*
f-cx---	*Central African Republic*
f-dm---	*Benin*
f-ea---	*Eritrea*
f-eg---	*Equatorial Guinea*
f-et---	*Ethiopia*
f-ft---	*Djibouti*
f-gh---	*Ghana*
f-gm---	*Gambia*
f-go---	*Gabon*
f-gv---	*Guinea*
f-iv---	*Cote d'Ivoire*
f-ke---	*Kenya*
f-lb---	*Liberia*
f-lo---	*Lesotho*
f-ly---	*Libya*
f-mg---	*Madagascar*
f-ml---	*Mali*
f-mr---	*Morocco*
f-mu---	*Mauritania*
f-mw---	*Malawi*
f-mz---	*Mozambique*
f-ng---	*Niger*
f-nr---	*Nigeria*
f-pg---	*Guinea-Bissau*
f-rh---	*Zimbabwe*
f-rw---	*Rwanda*
f-sa---	*South Africa*
f-sd---	*South Sudan*
f-sf---	*Sao Tome and Principe*
f-sg---	*Senegal*
f-sh---	*Spanish North Africa*
f-sj---	*Sudan*

f-sl---	*Sierra Leone*
f-so---	*Somalia*
f-sq---	*Eswatini*
f-ss---	*Western Sahara*
f-sx---	*Namibia*
f-tg---	*Togo*
f-ti---	*Tunisia*
f-tz---	*Tanzania*
f-ua---	*Egypt*
f-ug---	*Uganda*
f-uv---	*Burkina Faso*
f-za---	*Zambia*
fa-----	*Atlas Mountains*
fb-----	*Africa, Sub-Saharan*
fc-----	*Africa, Central*
fd-----	*Sahara*
fe-----	*Africa, Eastern*
ff-----	*Africa, North*
fg-----	*Congo River*
fh-----	*Africa, Northeast*
fi-----	*Niger River*
fl-----	*Nile River*
fn-----	*Sudan (Region)*
fq-----	*Africa, French-speaking Equatorial*
fr-----	*Great Rift Valley*
fs-----	*Africa, Southern*
fu-----	*Suez Canal (Egypt)*
fv-----	*Volta River (Ghana)*
fw-----	*Africa, West*
fz-----	*Zambezi River*
h------	*French Community*
i------	*Indian Ocean*
i-bi---	*British Indian Ocean Territory*
i-cq---	*Comoros*
i-fs---	*Terres australes et antarctiques francaises*
i-hm---	*Heard and McDonald Islands*
i-mf---	*Mauritius*
i-my---	*Mayotte*
i-re---	*Reunion*
i-se---	*Seychelles*
i-xa---	*Christmas Island (Indian Ocean)*
i-xb---	*Cocos (Keeling) Islands*
i-xc---	*Maldives*
i-xo---	*Socotra Island*
l------	*Atlantic Ocean*
ln-----	*North Atlantic Ocean*
lnaz---	*Azores*
lnbm---	*Bermuda Islands*
lnca---	*Canary Islands*
lncv---	*Cape Verde*

lnfa---	*Faroe Islands*
lnjn---	*Jan Mayen Island*
lnma---	*Madeira Islands*
lnsb---	*Svalbard (Norway)*
ls-----	*South Atlantic Ocean*
lsai---	*Ascension Island (Atlantic Ocean)*
lsbv---	*Bouvet Island*
lsfk---	*Falkland Islands*
lstd---	*Tristan da Cunha*
lsxj---	*Saint Helena*
lsxs---	*South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands*
m------	*Intercontinental areas (Eastern hemisphere)*
ma-----	*Arab Countries*
mb-----	*Black Sea*
me-----	*Eurasia*
mm-----	*Mediterranean Region; Mediterranean Sea*
mr-----	*Red Sea*
n------	*North America*
n-cn---	*Canada*
n-cn-ab	*Alberta (Kanada : provinca)*
n-cn-bc	*British Columbia*
n-cn-mb	*Manitoba*
n-cn-nf	*Newfoundland and Labrador*
n-cn-nk	*New Brunswick*
n-cn-ns	*Nova Scotia*
n-cn-nt	*Northwest Territories*
n-cn-nu	*Nunavut*
n-cn-on	*Ontario*
n-cn-pi	*Prince Edward Island*
n-cn-qu	*Quebec (Province)*
n-cn-sn	*Saskatchewan*
n-cn-yk	*Yukon Territory*
n-cnh--	*Hudson Bay*
n-cnm--	*Maritime Provinces*
n-cnp--	*Prairie Provinces*
n-gl---	*Greenland*
n-mx---	*Mexico*
n-us---	*United States*
n-us-ak	*Alaska*
n-us-al	*Alabama*
n-us-ar	*Arkansas*
n-us-az	*Arizona*
n-us-ca	*California*
n-us-co	*Colorado*
n-us-ct	*Connecticut*
n-us-dc	*Washington (D.C.)*
n-us-de	*Delaware*
n-us-fl	*Florida*
n-us-ga	*Georgia*
n-us-hi	*Hawaii*

n-us-ia	*Iowa*
n-us-id	*Idaho*
n-us-il	*Illinois*
n-us-in	*Indiana*
n-us-ks	*Kansas*
n-us-ky	*Kentucky*
n-us-la	*Louisiana*
n-us-ma	*Massachusetts*
n-us-md	*Maryland*
n-us-me	*Maine*
n-us-mi	*Michigan*
n-us-mn	*Minnesota*
n-us-mo	*Missouri*
n-us-ms	*Mississippi*
n-us-mt	*Montana*
n-us-nb	*Nebraska*
n-us-nc	*North Carolina*
n-us-nd	*North Dakota*
n-us-nh	*New Hampshire*
n-us-nj	*New Jersey*
n-us-nm	*New Mexico*
n-us-nv	*Nevada*
n-us-ny	*New York*
n-us-oh	*Ohio*
n-us-ok	*Oklahoma*
n-us-or	*Oregon*
n-us-pa	*Pennsylvania*
n-us-ri	*Rhode Island*
n-us-sc	*South Carolina*
n-us-sd	*South Dakota*
n-us-tn	*Tennessee*
n-us-tx	*Texas*
n-us-ut	*Utah*
n-us-va	*Virginia*
n-us-vt	*Vermont*
n-us-wa	*Washington (State)*
n-us-wi	*Wisconsin*
n-us-wv	*West Virginia*
n-us-wy	*Wyoming*
n-usa--	*Appalachian Mountains*
n-usc--	*Middle West*
n-use--	*Northeastern States*
n-usl--	*Middle Atlantic States*
n-usm--	*Mississippi River*
n-usn--	*New England*
n-uso--	*Ohio River*
n-usp--	*West (U.S.)*
n-usr--	*East (U.S.)*
n-uss--	*Missouri River*
n-ust--	*Southwest, New*

n-usu--	*Southern States*
n-xl---	*Saint Pierre and Miquelon*
nc-----	*Central America*
ncbh---	*Belize*
nccr---	*Costa Rica*
nccz---	*Canal Zone*
nces---	*El Salvador*
ncgt---	*Guatemala*
ncho---	*Honduras*
ncnq---	*Nicaragua*
ncpn---	*Panama*
nl-----	*Great Lakes; Lake States*
nm-----	*Mexico, Gulf of*
np-----	*Great Plains*
nr-----	*Rocky Mountains*
nw-----	*West Indies*
nwaq---	*Antigua and Barbuda*
nwaw---	*Aruba*
nwbb---	*Barbados*
nwbf---	*Bahamas*
nwbn---	*Bonaire (Netherlands Antilles)*
nwcj---	*Cayman Islands*
nwco---	*Curacao (Netherlands Antilles)*
nwcu---	*Cuba*
nwdq---	*Dominica*
nwdr---	*Dominican Republic*
nweu---	*Saint Eustatius (Netherlands Antilles)*
nwgd---	*Grenada*
nwgp---	*Guadeloupe*
nwhi---	*Hispaniola*
nwht---	*Haiti*
nwjm---	*Jamaica*
nwla---	*Antilles, Lesser*
nwli---	*Leeward Islands (West Indies)*
nwmj---	*Montserrat*
nwmq---	*Martinique*
nwna---	*Netherlands Antilles*
nwpr---	*Puerto Rico*
nwsd---	*Saba (Netherlands Atilles)*
nwst---	*Saint Martin*
nwsv---	*Swan Islands (Honduras)*
nwtc---	*Turks and Caicos Islands*
nwtr---	*Trinidad and Tobago*
nwuc---	*United States Miscellaneous Caribbean Islands*
nwvb---	*British Virgin Islands*
nwvi---	*Virgin Islands of the United States*
nwwi---	*Windward Islands*
nwxa---	*Anguilla*
nwxi---	*Saint Kitts-Nevis*
nwxk---	*Saint Lucia*

nwxm---	*Saint Vincent and the Grenadines*
p------	*Pacific Ocean*
pn-----	*North Pacific Ocean*
po-----	*Oceania*
poas---	*American Samoa*
pobp---	*Solomon Islands*
poci---	*Caroline Islands*
pocw---	*Cook Islands*
poea---	*Easter Island*
pofj---	*Fiji*
pofp---	*French Polynesia*
pogg---	*Galapagos Islands*
pogu---	*Guam*
poji---	*Johnston Island*
pokb---	*Kiribati*
poki---	*Kermadec Islands*
poln---	*Line Islands*
pome---	*Melanesia*
pomi---	*Micronesia (Federated States)*
ponl---	*New Caledonia*
ponn---	*Vanuatu*
ponu---	*Nauru*
popc---	*Pitcairn Island*
popl---	*Palau*
pops---	*Polynesia*
posh---	*Samoan Islands*
potl---	*Tokelau*
poto---	*Tonga*
pott---	*Micronesia*
potv---	*Tuvalu*
poup---	*United States Miscellaneous Pacific Islands*
powf---	*Wallis and Futuna Islands*
powk---	*Wake Island*
pows---	*Samoa*
poxd---	*Mariana Islands*
poxe---	*Marshall Islands*
poxf---	*Midway Islands*
poxh---	*Niue*
ps-----	*South Pacific Ocean*
q------	*Cold regions*
r------	*Arctic Ocean; Arctic regions*
s------	*South America*
s-ag---	*Argentina*
s-bl---	*Brazil*
s-bo---	*Bolivia*
s-ck---	*Colombia*
s-cl---	*Chile*
s-ec---	*Ecuador*
s-fg---	*French Guiana*
s-gy---	*Guyana*

s-pe---	*Peru*
s-py---	*Paraguay*
s-sr---	*Suriname*
s-uy---	*Uruguay*
s-ve---	*Venezuela*
sa-----	*Amazon River*
sn-----	*Andes*
sp-----	*Rio de la Plata (Argentina and Uruguay)*
t------	*Antarctic Ocean; Antarctica*
u------	*Australasia*
u-ac---	*Ashmore and Cartier Islands*
u-at---	*Australia*
u-at-ac	*Australian Capital Territory*
u-at-ne	*New South Wales*
u-at-no	*Northern Territory*
u-at-qn	*Queensland*
u-at-sa	*South Autralia*
u-at-tm	*Tasmania*
u-at-vi	*Victoria*
u-at-we	*Western Australia*
u-atc--	*Central Australia*
u-ate--	*Eastern Australia*
u-atn--	*Northern Australia*
u-cs---	*Coral Sea Islands*
u-nz---	*New Zealand*
w------	*Tropics*
x------	*Earth*
xa-----	*Eastern Hemisphere*
xb-----	*Northern Hemisphere*
xc-----	*Southern Hemisphere*
xd-----	*Western Hemisphere*
zd-----	*Deep space*
zju----	*Jupiter*
zma----	*Mars*
zme----	*Mercury*
zmo----	*Moon*
zne----	*Neptune*
zo-----	*Outer space*
zpl----	*Pluto*
zs-----	*Solar system*
zsa----	*Saturn*
zsu----	*Sun*
zur----	*Uranus*
zve----	*Venus*

C SEARCH INDEXES

C.1 AUTHORITY RECORDS (CONOR)

BASIC INDEX

It is possible to search through the complete basic index without using a search suffix. Search suffixes have been created for subfields that best display the content of the indexed document and are therefore most frequently used for searching. They can be used to limit the search to specific subfields.

Basic index - authority data

suffix	meaning	search	subfields
/CB	Corporate body name	word	210abcdefgh, 410abcdefgh, 510abcdefgh
/CP	Loc. of meet./Add. to corp. body n.	word	210ce, 410ce, 510ce, 710ce
/MY	Date of meeting	word	210f, 410f, 510f
/NT	Notes	word	300a, 330a, 340a, 820a, 830a
/PN	Personal name	word	200abcdf, 400abcdf, 500abcdf, 700abcdf

ADDITIONAL INDEXES

Additional indexes - record data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
AB=	Adopted records	phrase	—
CR=	Record created by	phrase	—
DM=	Date of creation	phrase	—
DR=	Date of last update	phrase	—
ID=	Record identification	phrase	—
IS=	ISNI	phrase	010a
LC=	Other system control numbers	phrase	035a
RE=	Record modified by	phrase	—

Additional indexes - authority data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
BI=	Record marks	word	992b
CB=	Corporate body name	phrase	210abcdefgh, 410abcdefgh, 510abcdefgh
CF=	Most frequent creator	phrase	911b
CH=	Auth. access point - corporate body name	phrase	210abcdefgh
CP=	Loc. of meet./Add. to corp. body n.	phrase	210ce, 410ce, 510ce, 710ce
FR=	Frequency	phrase	911c
MY=	Date of meeting	phrase	210f, 410f, 510f
NP=	Other identification marks	phrase	017a
OR=	Replacement record ID	word	001x
PH=	Auth. access point - person. name	phrase	200abcdf, 700abcdf
PN=	Personal name	phrase	200abcdf, 400abcdf, 500abcdf, 700abcdf
RN=	Conversion note	phrase	916x
VN=	Unlinked see reference	phrase	915abcdf

Notes

CB=, CH=, PH=, PN=, VN=

Since subfields of an individual field are indexed as one phrase, it is advisable to truncate the search term with the "*" character when searching with CB=, CH=, PH=, PN= or VN=. The access points in indexes CB=, CH=, PH= and PN= are indexed with all diacritics entered in the access point. They are not findable without the diacritics.

Additional indexes - coded data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
AS=	Researcher's code	phrase	200r
FC=	Institution/organization code	phrase	911a
LA=	Language used by person/corp. body	phrase	101a
NA=	Nationality	phrase	102a
RS=	Record status	phrase	001a

LIMITING

suffix	meaning	subfields
/CBR	Corporate body name record	001c = "b"
/PNR	Personal name record	001c = "a"

C Search indexes

C.2 AUTHORITY RECORDS (SGC)

BASIC INDEX

It is possible to search through the complete basic index without using a search suffix. Search suffixes have been created for subfields that best display the content of the indexed document and are therefore most frequently used for searching. They can be used to limit the search to specific subfields.

Basic index - authority data

suffix	meaning	search	subfields
/AT	Name/title	word	240at, 440atjxyz, 740at
/CB	Corporate body name	word	210abcdefghxz, 410abcdefghjxz, 710abcdefghxz
/DJ	Form subdivision	word	2XXj, 4XXj, 7XXj
/DX	Topical subdivision	word	2XXx, 4XXx, 7XXx
/DY	Geographical subdivision	word	2XXy, 4XXy, 7XXy
/DZ	Chronological subdivision	word	2XXz, 4XXz, 7XXz
/ET	Conventional name/title	word	243at, 443atjxyz, 743at
/FN	Family name	word	220acf, 420acfjxyz, 720acf
/FS	Form, genre or physical characteristics	word	280axyz, 480axyz, 780axyz
/GN	Geographical name	word	215axz, 415ajxyz, 715axz
/NS	Unlinked related access point	word	9503a
/NT	Notes	word	300a, 305ab, 310ab, 320a, 330a, 340a, 356a, 820a, 830a
/PN	Personal name	word	200abcdf, 400abcdfgjxyz, 700abcdf
/SE	Authorized access point in English	word	700abcdf, 710abcdefghxz, 715axz, 720acf, 730ahiklmnqrsuw, 740at, 743at, 750axyz, 780axyz
/SF	Access point from another system	word	400abcdfgjxyz3, 410abcdefghjxz3, 415ajxyz3, 420acfjxyz3, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz3, 440atjxyz3, 443atjxyz3, 450ajxyz3, 480axyz3
/SH	Authorized access point	word	200abcdf, 210abcdefghxz, 215axz, 220acf, 230ahiklmnqrsuw, 240at, 243at, 250axyz, 280axyz

suffix	meaning	search	subfields
/SU	Access point	word	200abcdf, 400abcdfgjxyz, 700abcdf, 210abcdefghxz, 410abcdefghjxz, 710abcdefghxz, 215axz, 415ajxyz, 715axz, 220acf, 420acfjxyz, 720acf, 230ahiklmnqrsuw, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz, 730ahiklmnqrsuw, 240at, 440atjxyz, 740at, 243at, 443atjxyz, 743at, 250axyz, 450ajxyz, 750axyz, 280axyz, 480axyz, 780axyz
/TN	Topical subject	word	250axyz, 450ajxyz, 750axyz
/UT	Title	word	230ahiklmnqrsuw, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz, 730ahiklmnqrsuw

Notes

/AT, /CB, /ET, /FN, /FS, /GN, /PN, /SU, /TN, /UT

Suffixes /AT, /CB, /ET, /FN, /FS, /GN, /PN, /SU, /TN, /UT limit the search to those 4XX fields that do not contain subfield 2.

/SF

Suffix /SF limits the search to those 4XX fields that contain subfield 2.

ADDITIONAL INDEXES

Additional indexes - record data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
CR=	Record creator	phrase	—
DM=	Date of creation	phrase	—
DR=	Date of last update	phrase	—
ID=	Record identification number	phrase	—
RE=	Record edited by	phrase	—

Additional indexes - authority data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
AT=	Name/title	phrase	240at, 440atjxyz, 740at
CB=	Corporate body name	phrase	210abcdefghxz, 410abcdefghjxz, 710abcdefghxz
DJ=	Form subdivision	phrase	2XXj, 4XXj, 7XXj
DX=	Topical subdivision	phrase	2XXx, 4XXx, 7XXx
DY=	Geographical subdivision	phrase	2XXy, 4XXy, 7XXy

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
DZ=	Chronological subdivision	phrase	2XXz, 4XXz, 7XXz
ET=	Conventional name/title	phrase	243at, 443atjxyz, 743at
FN=	Family name	phrase	220acf, 420acfjxyz, 720acf
FS=	Form, genre or physical characteristics	phrase	280axyz, 480axyz, 780axyz
GN=	Geographical name	phrase	215axz, 415ajxyz, 715axz
NS=	Unlinked related access point	phrase	950a3
OS=	Control numbers from other systems	phrase	035a, 4XX3
PN=	Personal name	phrase	200abcdf, 400abcdfgjxyz, 700abcdf
SE=	Authorized access point in English	phrase	700abcdf, 710abcdefghxz, 715axz, 720acf, 730ahiklmnqrsuw, 740at, 743at, 750axyz, 780axyz
SF=	Access point from another system	phrase	400abcdfgjxyz, 410abcdefghjxz, 415ajxyz, 420acfjxyz, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz, 440atjxyz, 443atjxyz, 450ajxyz, 480axyz, 4XX3
SH=	Authorized access point	phrase	200abcdf, 210abcdefghxz, 215axz, 220acf, 230ahiklmnqrsuw, 240at, 243at, 250axyz, 280axyz
SU=	Access point	phrase	200abcdf, 400abcdfgjxyz, 700abcdf, 210abcdefghxz, 410abcdefghjxz, 710abcdefghxz, 215axz, 415ajxyz, 715axz, 220acf, 420acfjxyz, 720acf, 230ahiklmnqrsuw, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz, 730ahiklmnqrsuw, 240at, 440atjxyz, 740at, 243at, 443atjxyz, 743at, 250axyz, 450ajxyz, 750axyz, 280axyz, 480axyz, 780axyz
TN=	Topical subject	phrase	250axyz, 450ajxyz, 750axyz
UT=	Title	phrase	230ahiklmnqrsuw, 430ahiklmnqrsuwjxyz, 730ahiklmnqrsuw

Notes

AT=, CB=, ET=, FN=, FS=, GN=, PN=, SU=, TN=, UT=

AT=, CB=, ET=, FN=, FS=, GN=, PN=, SU=, TN=, UT= are used to index only those 4XX fields that do not contain subfield 2. Subfields of an individual field are indexed as one phrase and in the same order as in the database. Therefore, it is advisable to truncate the search term with the "*" character. The access points are indexed with all entered diacritics, which is why searching without them will not be successful.

SE=, SH=

Subfields of an individual field are indexed as one phrase and in the same order as in the database.

SF=

SF= is used to index only those 4XX fields that contain subfield 2. Subfields of an individual field are indexed as one phrase and in the same order as in the database. The only exception is subfield 3 that is indexed as an independent phrase.

Additional indexes - identification data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
AR=	Related authority record number	phrase	5XX3
BI=	Record marks	phrase	992b
FA=	Broader term record number	phrase	5XX3
OR=	Replacement record ID	word	001x

Notes

FA=

FA= is used to index subfields 3 of those 5XX fields that contain code "g" in subfield 5.

Additional indexes - coded data

prefix	meaning	search	subfields
GA=	Geographic area code	phrase	160ab
LA=	Language used by person/corporate body	phrase	101a
NA=	Nationality	phrase	102ab
RS=	Record status	phrase	001a
SS=	System code	phrase	4XX2, 7XX2
UC=	UDC	phrase	675a

LIMITING

suffix	meaning	subfields
/AR	Authority record	001b = "x"
/CBR	Corporate body name record	001c = "b"
/ETR	Conventional name/title record	001c = "i"
/FNR	Family name record	001c = "e"
/FSR	Form, genre or physical characteristics record	001c = "l"
/GER	General explanatory record	001b = "z"
/GNR	Geographical name record	001c = "c"
/NTR	Name/title record	001c = "h"
/PNR	Personal name record	001c = "a"
/RR	Reference record	001b = "y"
/TNR	Topical subject record	001c = "j"
/UTR	Title record	001c = "f"